Schedules

Table of Contents for Schedules 1 to 14

[Page numbering updated for Council decision, and will be further updated for operative plan]

Decisions: A2c, A4a, A5g, B12b, E1e

1. Schedule of natural and human use values of Otago's surface water bodies

This schedule identifies some of the natural and human use values of Otago's lakes and rivers. These are the characteristics of a water body which are important to, or are an essential part of, ecological communities, or are enjoyed or utilised by people and communities. The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1-A8 for subregions).

The identification of natural and human use values supported by Otago's lakes and rivers provides a mechanism for recognising the existence of values which need to be taken into account and given appropriate protection in managing water use and land use activities (see Policy 5.4.2). The opportunity to provide such protection will arise when preparing or reviewing regional and district plans under the Resource Management Act, and when considering applications for resource consents.

This schedule of natural and human use values is divided into four parts:
(a) Schedule 1A: Natural values (page 265);
(b) Schedule 1B: Water supply values (page 301);
(c) Schedule 1C: Registered historic places (page 305);
(d) Schedule 1D: Spiritual and cultural beliefs, values and uses of significance to Kai Tahu (page 307).

The natural values identified in Schedule 1A are specifically related to Part II of the Resource Management Act but are limited to the attributes of the aquatic ecosystem that support indigenous flora and fauna, trout and salmon, and the regionally significant presence of gamebirds. The outstanding features and landscapes relate to those in Part II of the Act or those identified in the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order, which this Plan recognises.

Natural and human use values are not limited to those characteristics identified in the schedule. The natural character and amenity values of lakes and rivers are also important natural and human use values, which are given particular regard to by Policies 5.4.8 and 5.4.9. The non-listing of values in Schedule 1A is not to be taken as meaning that an area, value or habitat is not important or worthy of protection.

This schedule is not intended to represent a comprehensive or exhaustive list of natural and human use values. It contains information available during the preparation process of this Plan. There is now additional information available for many water bodies, however there may still be lakes or rivers for which there is no or insufficient information. Water bodies not included in the schedule, but in close proximity to those that have values identified, may share similar values.

Conversely, identification of a particular value for a river does not necessarily mean that value occurs at every point throughout that river. Identification does,

however, provide a starting point, in identifying what values are expected to occur.

1A Schedule of natural values

The following schedule identifies natural values supported by Otago's lakes and rivers. These include ecosystem values, outstanding natural features and landscapes, areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna, and areas with a high degree of naturalness.

The areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna are included where they meet criteria under Policy 10.5.2 of the Regional Policy Statement for Otago. Other scheduled values are established to provide certainty and to meet the requirements of the Objectives and Policies in Chapter 6 of the Regional Policy Statement for Otago.

The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions).

Note the codes for ecosystem values in Column 2 of Schedule 1A are given in Table 3.

Table 3: Codes for ecosystem values supported by lakes and rivers

Ecosystem Value	*Code*	*Explanation*
Physical Characteristics		
Size	**Psize**	Large water bodies supporting high numbers of particular species, or habitat variety, which can provide for diverse life cycle requirements of a particular species, or a range of species.
Unimpeded access	**Ppass**	Access within the main stem of a catchment through to the sea or a lake unimpeded by artificial means, such as weirs, and culverts.
Substrata: Macrophyte Boulder Gravel Sand Silt/mud Bedrock	**Pplant** **Pboulder** **Pgravel** **Psand** **Psilt** **Prock**	Refers to the bed composition of importance for resident biota.
Habitat Characteristics		
Spawning areas	**Hspawn**	Refers to presence of significant fish spawning areas: (t)=trout; (s)=salmon.
Juvenile rearing areas	**Hjuve**	Refers to presence of significant areas for development of juvenile fish: (t)=trout; (s)=salmon.

Ecosystem Value	*Code*	*Explanation*
Riparian vegetation	**Hriparian**	Refers to presence of riparian vegetation of significance to aquatic habitats.
Freedom from biological nuisances	**Exoticfree** **Weedfree** **Willowfree**	Refers to absence of: • exotic species of fish; • aquatic pest plants (eg Lagarosiphon) identified in the Pest Management Strategy for Otago 2001; • Crack willow.
Species Characteristics		
Exotic game fish: trout, salmon	**Trout** **Rtrout** **Salmon**	Refers to significant presence of trout. Refers to regionally significant presence of trout. Refers to significant presence of salmon.
Fishery values: eels	**Eel**	Refers to significant presence of eels.
Indigenous fish diversity	**Fishdiv**	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous fish species.
Indigenous fish – rare species	**Rarefish**	Refers to presence of indigenous fish species threatened with extinction.
Indigenous waterfowl diversity	**Birddiv**	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous waterfowl.
Indigenous waterfowl - rare species	**Birdrare**	Refers to presence of indigenous waterfowl threatened with extinction.
Indigenous Invertebrates diversity	**Invdiv**	Refers to presence of a significant range of indigenous invertebrates.
Indigenous Invertebrates - rare species	**Invrare**	Refers to presence of indigenous invertebrates threatened with extinction.
Indigenous- aquatic vegetation	**Sigveg**	Refers to presence of significant indigenous aquatic vegetation.
Gamebirds	**Gbird**	Refers to regionally significant presence of gamebirds.

Note that all map references given in Schedule 1A refer to the NZMS 260 series.

North Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Welcome Creek	Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Trout, Salmon. Invdiv in headwaters			
Unnamed former tributary of the Pacific Ocean a.k.a. Temby Swamp Stream	Ppass, Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout			
Waiareka Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning below J42:435586)			
Kakanui River (note, the Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	Psize, Ppass, all substrata, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), (inanga spawning below J42:443574), Hjuve, Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv. Willowfree, Hriparian upstream of I41:275733. Invrare (North branch) upstream of I41:110675		*Significant habitat* for longjaw galaxiid and koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness above Clifton Falls.
Kauru River	Pgravel, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for longjaw galaxiid.	
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of J42:334392			
Waianakarua River	Ppass, Pgravel, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning downstream of J42:403485), Rarefish, Fishdiv, Eel		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above afforested areas of the catchment.
South Branch Waianakarua	Ppass, Pgravel, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv. Invrare upstream of J42:305410			
Shag River (Waihemo) (note, the Shag Alluvium Aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	Psize, Ppass all substrata, Weedfree, Hspawn (inanga spawning below J43:351233), Trout(t), Eel, Rarefish. Invdiv in mid reaches		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid and koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Siberia Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	

North Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of the Shag River (Waihemo) a.k.a. Deem Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro upstream of I42:224388.	
Pigroot Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Weedfree. Invrare upstream of I42:072530			
Happy Valley Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Tipperary Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for hybrid galaxiid species.	
Deepdell Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Trotters Creek	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hjuve, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of J42:330322		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu and koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Pigeon Creek	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hjuve, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of J42:335339		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	

Maniototo subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Taieri River *upstream of Tiroiti* (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve, Weedfree, Eel, Trout downstream of Paerau weir. Hriparian, Trout, Birddiv, Invdiv, Rarefish upstream of Paerau weir. Invrare upstream of H43:544013, Gbird	a) Deep gorge (Taieri Falls) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem between H43:110567 and Canadian Flat. b) Deep gorge (Paerau Gorge) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem from Paerau Reservoir to NZMS 260 H42:369727. c) Scroll plain (Serpentine Flat) consisting of a meandering channel pattern and oxbow lakes and wetlands, from confluence with Bonds Creek to Paerau Reservoir. d) Scroll plain consisting of a meandering channel pattern and oxbow lakes and wetlands, from confluence with Linn Burn to confluence with Shepherds Hut Stream.	*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid, including tributaries upstream of Paerau weir. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Ailsa Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Bullocky Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Elbow Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River at H43:600125	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	

Maniototo subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Horse Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Rock and Pillar Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree. Invrare upstream of H43:772290			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Styx Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Exoticfree. Invrare upstream of H43:744254			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Logan Burn (note: see Schedule 9 for Great Moss Swamp wetland values)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Shepherds Hut Creek, McHardies Creek and Loganburn Reservoir	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve			
Linn Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H43:603294		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 600 metres asl.
Totara Creek	Weedfree, Trout (lower reaches), Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H42:595338		*Significant habitat* for unidentified galaxiid species.	A high degree of naturalness above 600 metres asl.
Sow Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Salmon, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Cambridge Creek (tributary of the Sow Burn)	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Ewe Burn	Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Rarefish, Trout		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Pig Burn	Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout			

Maniototo subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Kye Burn	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Rarefish, Eel, Trout	Areas of old gold sluicing landscapes.	*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid and roundhead galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Healy Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for unique community of flathead and roundhead galaxiids. Type locality for flathead galaxiid.	
Little Kye Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Trout, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Swin Burn	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	

Central Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka*	Psize, Prock, Pgravel, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Salmon, Rarefish, Birddiv		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid (tributaries).	
Chapmans Gully	Invrare upstream of G42:237420			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Luggate Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of F40:040924		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Princess Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F40:064925			
Manuherikia River main stem	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Trout. Invdiv in mid reaches. Birdrare above Falls Dam		*Significant habitat*: Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern - above Falls Dam.	
Rocks Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of H40:620976			
Unnamed tributary of the Manor Burn at G42:435365	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Chatto Creek	Pboulder, Hspawn, Hriparian, Weedfree, Trout, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Devonshire Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout			
Ophir Drainage Channel	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* type locality for roundhead galaxiid.	
Dunstan Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hriparian. Hjuve (t), Hspawn (t), Trout in lower reaches	Old gold sluicing landscapes at Blue Lake.		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Ida Burn and Pool Burn	Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			
Donald Stuarts Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree. Exoticfree, Invrare upstream of H41:508840			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Dovedale Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	

Central Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Earnscleugh or Fraser River	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Hriparian (except in lower reaches). Weedfree, Trout, Eel. Exoticfree in headwaters. Invrare upstream of F42:098420			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Bannock Burn	Pgravel, Hjuve, Hspawn, Eel, Trout			
Low Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Sheepskin Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Schoolhouse Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Lindis River	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
John Bull Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Amisfield Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Cardrona River	Pboulder, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Trout, Eel, Rarefish. Invrare (mid to upper reaches)		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl
Spotts Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Timber Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Branch Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Boundary Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Wrights Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Maori Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Kawarau River *between Lake Dunstan and Lake Wakatipu*	Psize, Pgravel, Prock, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Rarefish. Weedfree upstream of Lake Dunstan	Outstanding: (a) for its wild, scenic characteristics; (b) natural characteristics, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover River is in flood; (c) for scientific values, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover is in flood; (d) for recreational purposes, in particular rafting, jet boating and kayaking. Spectacular and rugged river gorge, schistose landscape, fast flowing white water and rapids, old gold sluicing landscape, from confluence with Arrow River to Lake Dunstan.	*Significant habitat* for koaro including many tributaries.	
Soho Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F41:866830			
Lake Hayes (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psand, Psilt, Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Trout			
Lakes Johnson, Luna, Kirkpatrick and Dispute	Hriparian, Eel, Trout			
Horne Creek	Weedfree. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Ppass, Trout in lower reaches			
Moke Lake (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Hriparian, Weedfree (also free of Elodea), Eel, Trout, Sigveg		*Significant vegetation:* Rare association of aquatic plants.	

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Lake Wakatipu (note: see Schedule 9 for Glenorchy and Woodbine wetland values)	Psize, Pplant, Weedfree, Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Rarefish, Invrare	Outstanding: (a) as a fishery; (b) for its scenic characteristics; (c) for scientific value, in particular water clarity, and bryophyte community; (d) for recreational purposes, in particular boating; (e) for historical purposes; (f) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the head of the lake, and the legend of the lake itself. Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly: • clear blue colour of the water, • river deltas, and • beaches, particularly uncommon beach features between Rat Point and White Point.	*Significant habitat* for koaro including many tributaries. *Significant vegetation:* Rare association of aquatic plants.	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Wakatipu at F42:747392	Weedfree, Invrare			
One Mile Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of E41:665659			
Gorge Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of E41:408857			

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Wye, Kingston and Staircase Creeks	Pboulder, Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish. Ppass in Staircase Creek only. Hspawn in lower reaches		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Streams from west and south of Richardson Mountains	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hjuve, Hspawn, Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Buckler Burn, Precipice Creek or Temple Burn, Twelve Mile Creek or Ox Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Rees River	Psize, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Salmon, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters; (b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence; (c) as habitat for wildlife; (d) for its scenic characteristics; (e) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river. High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices, from confluence with Hunter Creek to its source. System of braided gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu	*Significant habitat*: Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence with Hunter Creek.	

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
		to confluence with Hunter Creek.		
Earnslaw Burn (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Ppass, Hspawn, Hriparian, Hjuve, Trout, Weedfree, Salmon, Birddiv, Birdrare			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Diamond Lake, (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values) Diamond Creek and Lake Reid	Ppass, Psand, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Weedfree, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon (Quinnat), Birddiv, Rarefish	Outstanding (a) as habitat for wildlife and quinnat salmon; (b) as a fishery.	*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Diamond Lake tributary at E40:447978	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters; (b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence; (c) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to cultural attributes; (d) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems; (e) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience; (f) as habitat for wildlife; (g) for its scenic characteristics; (h) for its natural characteristics, in	*Significant habitat*: Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - above Beans Burn confluence to its source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence to Beans Burn.	

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
		particular natural turbidity; (i) scientific value, in particular natural turbidity; (j) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river. High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices above Beans Burn confluence to its source. System of braided gravel river channels with delta, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence with Beans Burn.		
Route Burn	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters; (b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence; (c) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to cultural attributes; (d) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to recreational attributes; (e) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems; (f) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and		A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
		resilience. High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices.		
Greenstone River, Caples River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters; (b) natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to recreational attributes; (c) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience. High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices.		A high degree of naturalness within National Park and DoC estate.
Lochy River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Eel, Trout	Outstanding: (a) as a fishery; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing. Wild and scenic characteristics, in main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its source.		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Collins Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Streams flowing to Lake Wakatipu between Halfway Bay and Elfin Bay, including Von River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Rarefish	Outstanding: (a) as a fishery; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing. Wild and scenic characteristics, in Von main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its source.	*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid (Von catchment).	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Bullock Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout			
Lake Wanaka (note: see Schedule 9 for Makarora Flat wetland values)	Psize, Psand, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Rarefish, Invrare	Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly the unmodified lake level, water quality and colour of the water.	*Significant vegetation:* Rare association of aquatic plants.	
Unnamed tributary of the Motatapu River at F40:825058	Weedfree, Invrare			
Unnamed tributary of the Motatapu River at F40:827055	Weedfree, Invrare			
Matukituki River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish	System of braided gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Wanaka to its source.	*Significant habitat:* Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from Lake Wanaka to its source. *Significant habitat* for koaro including many tributaries.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Streams flowing off West Wanaka, including Albert Burn	Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Trout			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park. A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Wilkin River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Birddiv, Birdrare	High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices above Kerin Forks to its source. System of braided, gravel river channels, in main stem from confluence with Makarora River to Kerin Forks	*Significant habitat:* Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - above upper forks to source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem from confluence with Makarora River to Kerin Forks.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Young River	Psize, Ppass, Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Makarora River	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	System of braided, gravel river channels with delta, in main stem between Lake Wanaka and confluence with Blue River.	*Significant habitat*: Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - in main stem between Lake Wanaka and confluence with Blue River.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park.
Brady Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Lake Hawea	Psize, Psand, Weedfree, Hjuve(t&s), Eel, Trout, Salmon	Scenic values within the wider landscape context of the surrounding mountains, particularly colour of the water.		

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Hunter River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare	High level of naturalness - free from significant interference by human practices between Long Flat Creek confluence and its source System of braided, gravel river channels, in main stem from Lake Hawea to confluence with Long Flat Creek.	*Significant habitat*: Presence of a breeding population of threatened endemic species - blue duck - between Long Flat Creek confluence and its source. Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, wrybill, banded dotterel - from Lake Hawea to confluence with Long Flat Creek.	A high degree of naturalness within Mount Aspiring/Tititea National Park. A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Dingle Burn (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Birdrare			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Timaru River	Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree,Trout. Invrare between G39:308280 and G39:313294 (incl tributaries)			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Hawea River	Psize, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Trout, Salmon, Eel			
Shotover River	Pgravel, Pboulder, Psand, Prock, Psize, Weedfree, Hriparian, Birddiv, Birdrare	Outstanding: (a) for its wild and scenic characteristics; (b) for its natural characteristics, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (c) scientific value, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (d) for recreational purposes, in particular	Lochnagar and Lake Creek, outstanding: (a) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience. *Significant habitat*: Areas of importance to internationally uncommon species - black fronted tern, banded dotterel - in main stem between Arthur Point and its	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
		rafting, kayaking and jet boating; (e) for historical purposes, in particular gold mining. Spectacular and rugged river gorge, schistose landscape, fast flowing white water and rapids, old gold sluicing landscape, in main stem between confluence with Iron Stone Stream and Arthur Point. Wild and scenic characteristics, from confluence with Iron Stone Stream to its source.	source.	
Carmichaels Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Deep Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Skippers Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Mill Creek	Pgravel, Psand, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Arrow River	Psize, Psand, Pgravel, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Weedfree, Trout			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Roaring Meg	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hriparian. Invrare upstream of F41:026844			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Nevis River	Psize, Ppass, Prock, Pgravel, Psand, Hspawn,, Hjuve, Weedfree, Eel, Trout, Birddiv, Birdrare. Invdiv above Nevis Crossing.	Main stem gorge from Nevis Crossing to Kawarau River confluence: Outstanding (a) for its wild, characteristics; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing and kayaking. Main stem above Nevis Crossing to source:		A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
		Outstanding (a) for its scenic, characteristics; (b) for recreational purposes, in particular fishing. High level of naturalness above Nevis Crossing to its source. Spectacular river gorge, white water and rapids, in main stem from Nevis Crossing to confluence with Kawarau River.		
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F43:820261	Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Sproules Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Schoolhouse Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:870478			
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:921450	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid	
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:951492	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:003487			
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:954541	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Nevis Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:870524			

Lakes subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of the Nevis River at F42:959529	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Doolans Creek Left Branch	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of F42:860561			
Rastus Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hriparian, Invrare upstream of F41:806641			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl

Roxburgh subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Island Block*	Psize, Psand, Pgravel, Prock, Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Birddiv. Hspawn(s) below Roxburgh dam, Sigveg below Roxburgh dam		*Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Obelisk Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G42:175339			
Elbow Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Coal Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G42:170321			
Teviot River	Pboulder, Weedfree, Willowfree (in upper reaches), Hjuve(t&s), Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Trout			
Lake Onslow (note: see Schedule 9 for Fortification Creek wetland values)	Hriparian, Hjuve(t), Hspawn(t), Trout			
Unnamed tributary of Lake Onslow at G43:458137	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Black Jacks Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G43:210086			
Benger Burn	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Tima Burn	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Streams flowing from Old Man Range /Kopuwai	Pboulder, Hspawn(t), Weedfree, Hriparian			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

Strath Taieri subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Taieri River *between Tiroiti and Pukerangi*	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Salmon, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Trout		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid (including many tributaries). *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago) *Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid and koaro in many tributaries below Middlemarch.	
Prices Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Lug Creek	Pboulder, Hriparian, Eel, Weedfree. Invrare upstream of H43:862280			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Cap Burn, Mare Burn, Scrub Burn and Six Mile (upper)	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Annetts Creek, Heeney Creek and House Creek	Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Six Mile Creek (lower)	Pgravel, Prock, Weedfree, Eel, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Invrare upstream of H43:853243			
Last Creek, Nant Creek, Dewar Creek and Kirkland Creek	Pgravel, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t)			
Nenthorn Stream	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Black Rock Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Manuka Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Washpool Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Deighton Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Spratts Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for	

Strath Taieri subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
			roundhead galaxiid.	
Sutton Stream	Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hriparian, Hjuve, Trout, Eel			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Burgan Stream	Weedfree, Exoticfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Stony Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H44:603910		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Salt Lake (near Sutton)	Weedfree	A rare example of a natural salt lake.		
March Creek	Pboulder, Pgravel, Psand, Psilt, Weedfree			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Waikouaiti River (excluding South Branch)	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn (t) (& inanga spawning between I43:240084 and I43:266087), Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Rarefish. Invrare between I43:183242 and I43:093297, and including tributaries between I43:148264 and I43:093297		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid, hybrid galaxiid, banded kokopu and koaro.	
Unnamed tributary of the Waikouaiti River at I43:097281	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Back Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Waikouaiti River South Branch	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.
Unnamed tributary of the Waikouaiti River a.k.a. Merton Stream at I43:244065	Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Toll Bar Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Flat Stream	Weedfree. Invrare in lower reaches			
Taieri River *between Pukerangi and Outram*	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Prock, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Fishdiv, Rarefish	Well defined, deep gorge (Taieri Gorge) cut into distinct rocky scarp, schistose landscape, in main stem between confluence with Ross Stream and Outram.	*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid (tributaries). *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Traquair Burn	Weedfree, Eel, Fishdiv			
Smugglers Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* (and type locality) for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Deep Stream	Pgravel, Psize in lower reaches. Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:605910		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Clarkes Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid at H44:682930.	
Unnamed tributary of Deep Stream at H44:660958	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of Deep Stream at H44:678947	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Barbours Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Deep Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:623987			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl.
Three O'clock Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Willowfree, Trout, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid and koaro.	
Christmas Creek	Ppass, Pboulder, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Willowfree			A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.
Lee Stream	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve, Hriparian, Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of I44:952867, and including tributaries upstream of I44:916868		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Black Rock Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Broad Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Canton Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Big Stream	Ppass, Pboulder, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Willowfree, Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Trout			A high degree of naturalness within Scenic Reserve.

Coastal subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Careys Creek	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Rarefish, Fishdiv, Invdiv (upper reaches)		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Waitati River	Ppass, but major abstractions can result in very low flows in lower stretches. Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn (t) (&inanga spawning below I44:205925), Hjuve(t). Hriparian in headwaters. Trout, Rarefish, Invdiv (upper reaches)		*Significant habitat* for koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness within Silverpeaks Scenic Reserve.
Fergusons Creek	Weedfree. Invrare above I44:170896			
Wetherstons Creek	Weedfree			
Orokonui Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu, koaro and banded kokopu. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Foote Stream and Mihiwaka Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Water of Leith	Pgravel, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian Rarefish, Salmon, Trout		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Streams entering Otago Harbour (except Water of Leith)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Exoticfree		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Deborah Bay Stream at I44:252876	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu.	

Coastal subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of Latham Bay a.k.a. Latham Bay Stream at I44:280824	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Macandrew Bay Stream at I44:233793	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour a.k.a. Otakou Stream at J44:318869	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of Papanui Inlet at J44:332820	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean at J44:345808 (Papanui Beach)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Robertsons Creek	Weedfree, Hspawn, Invrare			
Unnamed pond, Jones Creek at I44:115734	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean at I44:241763 (Boulder Beach)	Weedfree, Hspawn, Fishdiv			
Tomahawk Lagoon (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psilt, Weedfree, Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Invrare			
Otokia Creek	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	

Coastal subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Fern Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Birddiv		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Flax Stream	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Birddiv		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River a.k.a. Takitakitoa Stream	Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Birddiv, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Taieri River *between Henley and the sea* (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Ppass, Psilt, Psand, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Gbird	Lower Taieri Gorge	*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu and banded kokopu.	
Akatore Creek (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Trout, Fishdiv, Rarefish. Exoticfree upstream of H45:878565		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Bull Creek	Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Big Creek	Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Lower Tokomairiro River main stem (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psand, Psilt, Pgravel Pplant, Psize, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hriparian, Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout, Fishdiv			
Wangaloa Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Birddiv			

Coastal subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of the Pacific Ocean a.k.a. Turnbulls Creek at H46:787366	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Exoticfree, Rarefish, Birddiv		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Taieri River *between Outram and Henley*	Psize, Psilt, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Weedfree, Hjuve, Trout, Salmon, Eel, Birddiv, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Gbird			
Lakes Waipori/Waihola (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Eel, Trout, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish		*Significant habitat:* Presence of variety of waterfowl and native fish, including a breeding population of fernbird and giant kokopu.	
Mary Hill Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	
Lee Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel. Hriparian and Invrare above H44:898800			
Contour Channel and other West Taieri hill streams	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel. Hriparian in upper stretches			A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl
Mill Creek	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Meggat Burn	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish. Invrare upstream of H45:743693		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Waipori River	Ppass in lower stretches. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Fishdiv, Eel, Rarefish, Trout		*Significant habitat* for koaro upstream of dam.	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl and within Scenic Reserve.
Shepherd Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Tributaries of Waipori River	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for dusky galaxiid and koaro. Munro's Dam Stream type locality for dusky galaxiid.	
Lake Mahinerangi	Weedfree, Hriparian, Trout, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Unnamed tributaries of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:709803, H44:714801, and H44:724797	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Lammerlaw Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
North West Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Nardoo Stream	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:705754	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:720766	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of Pioneer Stream at H44:703752	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Boundary Creek	Hriparian, Hspawn, Hjuve			
Unnamed tributaries of Lake Mahinerangi at H44:775772, H44:778770, and H44:775770	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Verter Burn	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Post Office Creek	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Silver Stream	Pgravel, Weedfree, Trout, Eel. Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Invdiv (midreaches), Hriparian in upper catchment. Invrare upstream of I44:144849. Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro upstream of I44:114899 and including several tributaries. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness above 900 metres asl and within Scenic Reserve and water reserve.
Whare Creek	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Upper Tokomairiro River main stem (including East and West Branches)	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel, Rarefish. Hriparian in upper catchment		*Significant habitat* for fernbird. *Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid in tributaries. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (in East and West Branches).	

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of Fishers Stream at H45:706645	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Tokomairiro River West Branch at H45:693655	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for Lower Taieri galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Tokomairiro River West Branch a.k.a. Nuggety Gully	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Lovells Stream	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			
Lake Tuakitoto (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Ppass, Psilt, Psand, Pplant, Psize, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Birddiv, Birdrare, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu. Also a breeding population of fernbird.	
Lake Kaitangata (and Lake Kaitangata/Lake Tuakitoto Drainage)	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	
Saddle Stream	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	
McCrosties Drain	Weedfree, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	
Clutha River /Mata-Au *between Balclutha and the sea* (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn(s), Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Salmon, Fishdiv, Rarefish, Gbird			
Puerua River (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Ppass, Psilt, Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu (Puerua River deviation)	
Glenomaru Stream	Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t). Invdiv in mid reaches			

Southwest Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Pomahaka River	Psize, Ppass, Pgravel, Psand, Prock, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Hriparian, Rtrout, Eel, Fishdiv, Invdiv. Invrare between G45416466 and confluence with Clutha River/Mata-Au, Gbird			
Timber Creek	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Trout. Invrare upstream of G43:173032			
Unnamed tributary of Flodden Creek a.k.a. Whisky Gully	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:216674			
Rankle Burn	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:274640			
Back Stream West Branch	Weedfree, Invdiv			
Bullock Creek	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G43:170093			
Waiwera River	Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hriparian, Hjuve(t&s), Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Invdiv		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Kaihiku Stream	Pgravel, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Eel, Trout, Invdiv (mid reaches)			
Clutha River /Mata-Au *between Island Block and Balclutha*	Psize, Ppass, Psand, Pgravel, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve, Eel, Trout, Salmon, Sigveg, Birddiv, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Gbird between Balclutha and Tuapeka River mouth	Beaumont and Rongahere Gorge.	*Significant habitat:* Remnant indigenous ecosystem at Birch Island. *Significant vegetation*: Rare association of aquatic plants above confluence with Tuapeka.	

Southwest Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Unnamed tributary of the Clutha River/Mata-Au a.k.a. Raes Junction Stream	Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Canadian Creek	Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	
Unnamed tributary of the Tuapeka River a.k.a. Konini Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Waitahuna River	Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Rarefish, Eel, Trout. Invrare upstream of H44:653760		*Significant habitat* for Waitahuna dusky galaxiid (in headwaters and upper tributaries), and flathead galaxiid.	
Tuapeka River	Pgravel, Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Eel, Trout. Invdiv in upper reaches			
Unnamed tributaries of the Tuapeka River upstream of G45:472668	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid and dusky galaxiid.	
Wetherston Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Corkscrew Road Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Blackcleugh Burn (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Weedfree. Invrare upstream of G45:340676			
Kuriwao Stream	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			

Southwest Otago subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Mokoreta River (upper stretches, within Otago region)	Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			
Waipahi River (lower stretches, within Otago region)	Pplant, Pgravel, Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t&s), Hjuve(t&s), Rtrout, Eel			

Catlins subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Catchments between Fleming River and Longbeach Creek (excl Tautuku River)	Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Birddiv			A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Tautuku River	Psize, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn, Hjuve, Hriparian, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Eel	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from its mouth to its source.		A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Tautuku Bay Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for banded kokopu.	
Tahakopa River (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Pgravel, Psize, Weedfree, Rarefish, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Fishdiv, Birddiv		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Jumbo Creek	Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro and banded kokopu.	
Gorge Creek	Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Tahakopa River at G47:268063	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Maclennan River (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Weedfree, Ppass, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Fishdiv, Birddiv, Rarefish	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from confluence with Tahakopa River to its source.	*Significant habitat* for koaro. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Waitangi Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for koaro.	
Matai Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid and banded kokopu.	
Catlins River (note: see Schedule 9 for wetland values)	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Hriparian, Trout, Eel, Rarefish, Fishdiv, Invdiv	Scenic values with silver beech margins, from its mouth to its source.	*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu, banded kokopu and roundhead galaxiid. *Significant habitat* for lamprey (uncommon in Otago).	A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Purakaunui River	Pboulder, Ppass (below Falls), Weedfree, Eel	Purakaunui Falls.		A high degree of naturalness within bush, apart from viewing structures.

Catlins subregion

Water body	*Ecosystem Values*	*Outstanding natural feature or landscape*	*Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna*	*Areas with a high degree of naturalness*
Frank Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Wallis Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Craggy Tor Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Daphne Brook	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for flathead galaxiid.	
Tarwood Stream	Weedfree		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Papatupu Stream	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
Unnamed tributary of the Catlins River at G46:274228	Weedfree, Rarefish		*Significant habitat* for roundhead galaxiid.	
McLaren Creek	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu, koaro, roundhead galaxiid and banded kokopu.	
Owaka River	Psize, Pgravel, Ppass, Weedfree, Hriparian, Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Fishdiv, Trout, Eel. Invdiv in upper reaches			A high degree of naturalness within bushed catchments.
Unnamed tributary of the Owaka River at H46:504119	Weedfree, Rarefish, Fishdiv		*Significant habitat* for giant kokopu.	
Waipati (Chaslands) River	Hspawn(t), Hjuve(t), Trout, Eel			

Sources for information contained in Schedule 1A

The outstanding natural features and landscapes, areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna identified in this schedule are derived from the following publications:

Allibone, R.M. (1997) Freshwater Fish of the Otago Region. Department of Conservation. Otago Conservancy Miscellaneous Report Series No. 36. (includes NIWA Freshwater Fish database for Otago rivers)

Biggs, BJ and Shand, BI (1985) Biological Communities and the Potential Effects of Power Developments in the Lower Clutha River - Otago. Report no. WS987, Ministry of Works and Development.

Clayton, J. (1993) Resource Evaluation and Operational Programme For Lakeweed: The Upper Clutha and Kawarau Catchment Areas. Prepared by NIWA Ecosystems for the Otago Regional Council.

Department of Conservation: Special Sites of Wildlife Interest.

Grindell, D.S. and P.A. Guest (eds) (1986) A list of Rivers and Lakes Deserving Inclusion in a Schedule of Protected Waters. Water and Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 97. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

Grindell, D.S. (1984) A National Inventory of Wild and Scenic Rivers. Water and Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 68. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

Kenny, J.A. and B.W. Hayward (eds) (1993) Inventory of Important Geological Sites and Landforms in the Otago region. Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication No. 77. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.

Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973

Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991

Ministry for the Environment (1997) Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Water and Soil Conservation Authority (1982) A Draft for a National Inventory of Wild and Scenic Rivers. Part 1 - Nationally Important Rivers. Water and Soil Miscellaneous Publication, No. 97. National Water and Soil Conservation Authority, Wellington.

1B Schedule of water supply values

This schedule identifies existing water takes from lakes and rivers, where the water taken is used for public water supply purposes. The communities identified in the schedule have come to rely upon these water supplies to provide for their social, economic and cultural well being. Rule 12.1.3.1 provides for replacement consents for these takes as a controlled activity, to provide certainty for these communities. The water takes are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions and site locations).

Water is also taken for private water supply throughout Otago, particularly for domestic supply to dwellings such as farm homesteads and associated buildings, usually without treatment. It is also consumed without treatment by musterers, anglers, trampers, cyclists, hunters and other backcountry users. Areas with a high degree of naturalness, identified in Schedule 1A, will often contain water bodies with relatively pristine water quality. Those that utilise the water without treating it take the risk that it may contain giardia or other pathogenic (disease causing) organisms.

North Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Kakanui River (note, the shallow aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	1 2 3 4	Windsor and Dunrobin Water Supplies at J41:325737 Weston and Enfield Water Supplies at J41:381667 Reidston Water Supply at J42:405595 Kakanui Water Supply at J42:430581
Kauru River	5	Kauru Hill Water Supply at J41:314637
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	6	Hampden-Moeraki Water Supply at J42:364413
Shag River (Waihemo) (note, the shallow aquifer forms an integral part of the water body)	7 8 9	Dunback Water Supply at I43:274279 Palmerston (including Blue Mountain) Water Supply at J43:317237 Goodwood Water Supply at J43:343234
Waianakarua River	10	Herbert-Waianakarua Water Supply at J42:339507

Maniototo subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Sow Burn	11	Patearoa Water Supply at H42:786435
Ewe Burn	12	Ranfurly Water Supply at H41:800689, H41:836770 and H41:794684

Central Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Clutha River/Mata-Au	13	Clyde Water Supply at G42:199521

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka (including Lake Dunstan)	14	Cromwell Water Supply at G41:120670
Manuherikia River catchment	15 16	St Bathans Water Supply at H40:592926 and H40:602938 Omakau and Ophir Water Supplies at G41:427626

Lakes subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Lake Wakatipu	17	Queenstown Water Supply from E41:666653 and F41:719664
Lake Hayes Tributary	18	Lake Hayes Water Supply at F41:794738
Lake Wanaka	19	Wanaka Water Supply at F40:033062 and F40:013057
Lake Hawea	20	Hawea Water Supply at G40:123153

Roxburgh subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Island Block*	21	Roxburgh Hydro Village Water Supply at G43:225194
Benger Burn	22	Ettrick Water Supply at G43:198030

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Deep Stream	23	Dunedin Water Supply at H44:677992
Deep Creek	24	Dunedin Water Supply at H43:665037
Fortification Creek Dam	25	Hindon Water Supply at I44:906923
Waikouaiti River	26	Waikouaiti Water Supply at I43:232079
Waikouaiti River	27	Mt Pleasant-Stoneburn Water Supply at I43:155263

Coastal subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Water of Leith	28 29 30 31 32	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:152820 (Ross Creek) I44:153833 (Nicols Creek); I44:160843 (Lower Morrisons Creek) I44:153849 (Upper Morrisons Creek); and I44:164857 (West Branch)
Sullivans Dam	33	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:172863
Rossville Reservoir	34 35	Port Chalmers Water Supply at I44:233865 (Rossville intake); and I44:227879 (Cedar Farm intake)
Waitati River	36	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:158883 (Burns Creek);

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
	37 38	I44:160873 (Jeffersons Creek); and I44:159870 (Williams Creek)
Wetherstons Creek	39	Waitati Water Supply at I44:201882

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Taieri River *between Outram and Henley*	40	Outram Water Supply at I44:955804
Mill Creek	41	West Taieri Water Supply at H44:833730
Meggat Burn	42	North Bruce Water Supply at H45:743693
Silver Stream catchment	43 44 45 46	Dunedin Water Supply at I44:096859; I44:105844; I44:105848; and I44:105850
Tokomairiro River East Branch	47	Milton Water Supply at H45:746529
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Balclutha and the sea*	48 49	Bruce Water Supply at H46:619343 Kaitangata and Wangaloa Water Supplies at H46:667308
Puerua River	50	Richardson Water Supply at H46:510257

Southwest Otago subregion

Water body or Catchment	Site No.	Water Supply Values
Pomahaka River	51 52	Glenkenich Water Supply at G44:103754 Pomahaka and Clinton Water Supplies at G45:342498
Timber Creek	53	Moa Flat Water Supply at G43:172033
Greens Creek	54	Rural Water Supply at G44:104752
Unnamed tributary of Flodden Creek a.k.a. Whisky Gully	55	Tapanui Water Supply at G45:223660
Back Stream West Branch	56	Clydevale Water Supply at G45:324622
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Island Block and Balclutha*	57 58	Richardson Water Supply at G45:491435 Balclutha Water Supply at H46:580363
Waitahuna River	59	Balmoral 1 and 2 and Tuapeka East Water Supplies at H45:523564
Bungtown Creek	60	Lawrence Water Supply at H44:573773
Tuapeka River	61	Tuapeka Water Supply at G44:491742
Bluejacket Gully	62	Lawrence Water Supply at H44:543747

1C Schedule of registered historic places

This schedule identifies registered historic places which occur in, on, under or over the beds or margins of Otago's lakes and rivers. Historic places are an important cultural resource as they provide links with Otago's history and heritage.

There are other sites, buildings, places and areas of heritage value on the beds or margins of Otago rivers or lakes that are not identified in this schedule. The New Zealand Historic Places Trust retains information about important but unregistered historic values.

The registered historic places are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions).

North Otago subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Oamaru Creek	Japanese Red Bridge, Oamaru Public Gardens Thames Street Bridge, Thames Street, Oamaru
Kakanui River	Clarks Flourmill, including dam, gate and race, SH 1, Maheno
McCormicks Creek	McCormick's Creek Bridge, SH 85, Dunback
Waianakarua River North Branch	Graves Dam, Breakneck Road, Waianakarua Turnbull Thompson Bridge, SH 1, Waianakarua
Waianakarua River South Branch	Waianakarua Bridge, SH 1, Waianakarua

Maniototo subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Place
Hog Burn	Naseby Historic Area, Naseby – various culverts and crossings in or over the river

Central Otago subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka*	Bridge Piers, SH8, Alexandra Earnscleugh Bridge and Piers, Clyde
Manuherikia River	Shakey Bridge, Alexandra Daniel O'Connell Bridge, Ophir Bridge Road–, Ophir
Lake Dunstan	Old Bannockburn Bridge Foundations (submerged). Cromwell Bridge, Cromwell

Lakes subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Kawarau River	Kawarau Falls bridge and dam, Frankton, Queenstown Kawarau Gorge Suspension Bridge, SH 6, Gibbston
Luggate Creek	Luggate Flourmill, Luggate
Horne Creek	Horne Creek Bridge, Ballarat Street, Queenstown
Shotover River	Oxenbridge Tunnel, Arthurs Point, Queenstown Edith Cavell Bridge, Arthurs Point, Queenstown
Mill Creek	Wakatipu Flourmill Complex, Speargrass Flat Road. Butel's Flourmill, Millbrook
Murdochs Creek	Bullendale Battery and Dynamo, Skippers catchment
Stony Creek	"Murphy's Creek" suspended pipe over Stony Creek, Skippers catchment

Roxburgh subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Island Block*	Four Span Steel Truss Bridge, Millers Flat Old bridge piers at Roxburgh, adjacent to current bridge

Strath Taieri subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Place
Taieri River *between Tiroiti and Pukerangi*	Hyde Bridge, SH 87, Hyde

Coastal subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Water of Leith	George Street Bridge, George Street, Dunedin Cast Iron Footbridge, University of Otago, Dunedin Stone Bridge, University of Otago, Dunedin
Ross Creek	Earth Dam, Burma Road, Dunedin Valve Tower and Jetty, Burma Road, Dunedin

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion

Water body	Registered Historic Places
Clutha River Mata-Au *between Balclutha and the sea*	Blair Railway Bridge, SH 91, Balclutha Balclutha Bridge, SH 1, Balclutha
Pioneer Stream and Reef Creek	Otago Pioneer Quartz Historic Reserve containing many relics of former mining activity

1D Schedule of spiritual and cultural beliefs, values and uses of significance to Kai Tahu

This schedule identifies the spiritual or cultural beliefs, values or uses associated with water bodies of significance to Kai Tahu. The values are identified by geographic subregion and by individual water bodies, or groups of water bodies, within each subregion (see Maps A1–A8 for subregions). Note that the codes for these values are given in Table 4. Kai Tahu provided the information that appears in this schedule.

Where an activity will require a resource consent, Policy 5.4.2 will apply. This means that where an activity is to occur with respect to any water body for which this schedule identifies a particular spiritual or cultural belief, value or use, it may be necessary for the applicant to consult with Kai Tahu in a manner which is consistent with that set out in the document "Kai Tahu Ki Otago - Natural Resource Management Plan".

Table 4: Code for Kai Tahu beliefs, values and uses ascribed to water bodies

Code	Mana Interests:
MA1	**Kaitiakitanga** – the exercise of guardianship by Kai Tahu in accordance with tikanga Maori* in relation to Otago's natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.
MA2	**Mauri** – life force; for example the mauri of a river is most recognisable when there is abundance of water flow and the associated ecosystems are healthy and plentiful; a most important element in the relationship that Kai Tahu have with the water bodies of Otago.
MA3	**Waahi tapu and/or Waiwhakaheke** – sacred places; sites, areas and values associated with water bodies that hold spiritual values of importance to Kai Tahu. (Note: Kai Tahu should be consulted regarding the location of these places, sites areas and values for a river identified as MA3).
MA4	**Waahi taoka** – treasured resource; values, sites and resources that are valued and reinforce the special relationship Kai Tahu have with Otago's water resources.

Code	Access/Customary Use Interests:
MB1	**Mahika kai** – places where food is procured or produced. Examples in the case of waterborne mahika kai include eels, whitebait, kanakana (lamprey), kokopu (galaxiid species), koura (fresh water crayfish), fresh water mussels, indigenous waterfowl, watercress and raupo.
MB2	**Kohanga** – important nursery/spawning areas for native fisheries and/or breeding grounds for birds.
MB3	**Trails** – sites and water bodies which formed part of traditional routes, including tauraka waka (landing place for canoes).
MB4	**Cultural materials** – water bodies that are sources of traditional weaving materials (such as raupo and paru) and rongoa (medicines).
MB5	**Waipuna** – sources of water highly regarded for their purity, healing and health-giving powers.

* the correct way of doing things, according to custom.

North Otago subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Awamoko Stream			✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Landon Creek				✓					
Awamoa Creek				✓				✓	
Waiareka Creek				✓	✓		✓	✓	
Kakanui River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Oamaru Creek				✓	✓			✓	
Kakaho Creek				✓				✓	
Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek				✓			✓	✓	
Ngutukaka Creek				✓					
Waiwherowhero Creek				✓					
Waimataitai				✓	✓			✓	
Creeks between Waimataitai & Shag Point/Matakaea				✓					
Stony Creek				✓	✓	✓			
Bobbys Head Creek			✓	✓					
Most creeks between Bobbys Head & Pleasant River				✓					
Shag River (Waihemo)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Waianakarua River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pleasant River			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Trotters Creek	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Maniototo subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Taieri River, upstream of Tiroiti	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Streams on the west-facing slopes of the Rock and Pillar Range, excluding Logan Burn				✓	✓				
Kye Burn	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Central Otago subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Lake Wanaka*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Manuherikia River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Moa Creek				✓					
Other Manuherikia tributaries	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Little Bremner Creek				✓					
Earnscleugh or Fraser River				✓					
Bannock Burn				✓					
Lindis River				✓			✓	✓	
Cardrona River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Lakes subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Kawarau River *between Lakes Dunstan and Wakatipu*	✓	✓		✓			✓	✓	
Lake Hayes				✓	✓				
Lake Wakatipu	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Lake Reid				✓					
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Route Burn	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Greenstone River, Caples River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lochy River				✓					
Streams flowing to Lake Wakatipu between Halfway Bay and Elfin Bay, including Von River				✓					
Lake Wanaka	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Matukituki River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Streams flowing off West Wanaka, including Albert Burn				✓	✓				
Makarora River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lake Hawea	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Hunter River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Dingle Burn				✓					
Timaru River				✓					
Hawea River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Shotover River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Arrow River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Roaring Meg	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓		
Nevis River	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓		

Roxburgh subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Alexandra and Island Block*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Teviot River					✓				
Lake Onslow				✓	✓				
Minzion Burn				✓					

Strath Taieri subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Great Moss Swamp				✓	✓				
Red Swamp Creek				✓					
Taieri River *between Tiroiti and Pukerangi*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Nenthorn Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Deighton Creek				✓					

Streams flowing on west side of Taieri Ridge				✓					
Lug Creek, Wandle Creek and other streams flowing on the east side of the Rock and Pillar Range				✓					

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Taieri River *between Pukerangi and Outram*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Three O'clock Stream				✓					
Lee Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Ross Stream				✓					
Deep Stream (and Deep Creek)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Waikouaiti River (excluding South Branch)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waikouaiti River South Branch	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lower Waikouaiti River (estuary and tidal zone)			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Hawksbury Lagoon			✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Streams between Karitane & Yellow Bluff (Te Pa Hawea)				✓					

Coastal subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Streams between Summer Hill and Brighton, excluding Taieri and Tokomairiro River main stems			✓	✓					
Akatore River			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lower Tokomairiro River main stem	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Taieri River *between Henley and the sea*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Unnamed tributary of the Taieri River a.k.a. Takitakitoa Stream	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	
Otokia Creek	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Deep Creek (Omimi)				✓			✓		
Evansdale Creek				✓					
Kaikorai Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Otago Peninsula streams	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Water of Leith			✓	✓					
Waitati River				✓					

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Taieri River *between Outram and Henley*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Lakes Waipori and Waihola, Sinclair Wetlands	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Contour Channel and other West Taieri hill streams					✓				
Waipori River				✓	✓				
Silver Stream	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Owhiro Stream	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Upper Tokomairiro River main stem					✓				
Lovells Stream					✓				
Lake Tuakitoto	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Balclutha and the sea*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waitepeka River, Puerua River including Glenomaru Stream tributary				✓	✓	✓	✓		

Southwest Otago subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Pomahaka River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waiwera River					✓				
Clutha River/Mata-Au *between Island Block and Balclutha*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Waitahuna River					✓				
Waipahi River (lower stretches within Otago region)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Catlins subregion									
Water body	**MA1**	**MA2**	**MA3**	**MA4**	**MB1**	**MB2**	**MB3**	**MB4**	**MB5**
Catchments between Fleming River and Longbeach Creek (excluding Tautuku River)			✓	✓	✓				
Tautuku River			✓	✓					
Tahakopa River	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Maclennan River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Catlins River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Owaka River	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Karoro Creek			✓	✓	✓				

2. Schedule of specified restrictions on the exercise of permits to take surface water

This schedule provides specified minimum flows applying to the taking of surface water within primary and supplementary allocation from catchments identified in Maps B1 to B5, and Welcome Creek. ~~The first supplementary water allocations and minimum flows for takes from the Kakanui catchment are also provided for.~~ The schedule should be read in conjunction with the policies contained in section 6.4.

Schedule 2A specifies minimum flows that apply to the primary allocation water taken from the Shag, Kakanui, Welcome Creek, Water of Leith, Taieri, Lake Hayes, Manuherikia, Waitahuna, Waianakarua, Trotters, Luggate and Lake Tuakitoto catchments, as ~~mapped~~ identified in Maps B1 to B5. The last column of Schedule 2A also specifies the primary allocation limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(a)(i) for the whole catchments of the rivers and lakes. The catchment areas for the primary allocation limits set by Policy 6.4.2(a)(i) may be larger than those specified on Maps B1 to B5.

Schedule 2B specifies minimum flows that apply to ~~provides the first~~ specified blocks of supplementary ~~allocations~~ allocation for ~~the Kakanui~~ some ~~catchment~~ catchments. ~~Further~~ Additional supplementary allocation may be granted under Policies 6.4.9 and 6.4.10.

~~The minimum flows in this schedule were able to be established because there are monitoring sites for these catchments with adequate flow records, which have enabled the effects of taking on those flows to be determined.~~

Schedule 2 identifies minimum flows in litres per second and the site at which flows will be monitored. When the minimum flow is reached, consents to take water from the identified catchment will cease or will be suspended by the Otago Regional Council, in accordance with Policy 6.4.11 of this Plan. The flows listed in Schedule 2, which trigger suspension, use the instantaneous flow rates.

In accordance with Policy 6.4.1A, groundwater takes from aquifers listed in Schedule 2C and identified in the C-series maps, and other connected groundwater, are considered against primary or supplementary allocation provided for by Policies 6.4.2 and 6.4.9 and where listed in Schedules 2A and 2B, and may be subject to the minimum flows identified.

Schedule 2D identifies matters to be considered when making additions to these schedules through a plan change.

Decisions: A2c, E1b

2A Schedule of specific minimum flows for primary allocation takes in accordance with Policy 6.4.3, and primary allocation limits in accordance with ~~Policy~~ Policies 6.4.2(a)(i) and 6.4.1A

The following schedule:

1. Identifies the minimum flows that apply to the taking of surface water, which includes groundwater managed as surface water in terms of Policy 6.4.1A within primary allocation from the catchments shown in Maps B1 to B5, Welcome Creek and aquifers shown in the C-series maps. Maps B1–B5 identify the location of catchment area boundaries and numbered monitoring sites referred to in the schedule for setting and measuring the minimum flows.
2. Specifies the primary allocation limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(a)(i). That limit is exceeded in catchments where the consented takes as at 28 February 1998 set a higher limit in accordance with Policy 6.4.2(a)(ii). The catchments in which the limit set by Policy 6.4.2(a)(i) is exceeded by Policy 6.4.2(a)(ii) (as at 20 December 2008) are the Shag, Kakanui, Taieri, Lake Hayes, Luggate and Manuherikia.

Catchment See Maps B1-B5	Monitoring Site (with MS number) See Maps B1–B5	Minimum flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow)	Primary Allocation Limits in accord with Policy 6.4.2(a)~~(i)~~ (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Welcome Creek catchment	Steward Road	600	600 *Welcome Creek catchment from mouth to headwaters (Also subject to Table 12.1.4.2)*
Kakanui catchment **(a) October to April inclusive**	Mill Dam (MS 3) and McCones (MS 3b)	250 (300 for secondary permits) If 250 breached, flow must return to 400 before taking can recommence.	750 ~~litres/sec~~ *Kakanui catchment from mouth to headwaters excluding the Waiareka Creek and Island Stream catchments.*
(b) May to September inclusive	Clifton Falls (MS 3a) Mill Dam (MS 3) and McCones (MS 3b)	400 for primary and secondary permits	
Waianakarua catchment	Browns Pump (MS 13)	200 (October to April) 400 (May to September)	190 ~~litres/sec~~ *Waianakarua catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Trotters catchment	Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	10 (October to April) 35 (May to September)	15 ~~litres/sec~~ *Trotters catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Shag catchment (both minimum flows apply)	Goodwood Pump (MS 1) Craig Road (MS 2)	28 150	280 ~~litres/sec~~ *Shag catchment from mouth to headwaters*

Catchment See Maps B1-B5	Monitoring Site (with MS number) See Maps B1–B5	Minimum flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow)	Primary Allocation Limits in accord with Policy 6.4.2(a)~~(i)~~ (litres per second – instantaneous flow)
Water of Leith catchment	Water of Leith at University Footbridge (MS 4)	94	140 ~~litres/sec~~ *Water of Leith catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Taieri River catchment upstream of Paerau	Paerau Dam (MS 5a)	850	4860 ~~litres/sec~~ *Taieri River catchment from mouth to headwaters.*
Taieri River catchment between Paerau and Waipiata	Taieri River at Waipiata (MS 5)	1000	
Taieri River catchment between Waipiata and Sutton	Taieri River at Sutton (MS 6)	1250	
Taieri River catchment between Sutton and Outram	Taieri River at Outram (MS 6a)	2500	
Luggate catchment	SH6 Bridge (MS 11)	180 (November to April) 500 (May to October)	500 ~~litres/sec~~ *Luggate catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Lake Hayes catchment area	Mill Creek at Fish Trap (MS 7)	180	260 ~~litres/sec~~ *Lake Hayes catchment from lake outlet to headwaters*
Manuherikia River catchment upstream of Ophir	Manuherikia River at Ophir (MS 8)	820	3200 ~~litres/sec~~ *Manuherikia catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Waitahuna River catchment	Waitahuna River at Tweeds Bridge (MS 9)	450	650 ~~litres/sec~~ *Waitahuna catchment from mouth to headwaters*
Lake Tuakitoto catchment	Lovells Creek at SH1 (MS 10)	5	30 ~~litres/sec~~ *Lake Tuakitoto catchment from mouth to headwaters*

Decisions: E1b, B10a, D1a

2B Schedule of ~~the first~~ supplementary ~~allocations~~ allocation blocks and specific minimum flows ~~for the Kakanui River~~ in accordance with Policy 6.4.9(c)

Catchment (See Maps B1–B5) & Supplementary Block Number	Minimum Flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow) at the monitoring site(s) ~~that trigger the minimum flow~~ (See Maps B1–B5)	Supplementary Allocation ~~limit~~ Block (litres per second – ~~as calculated on an~~ instantaneous ~~basis~~ flow)
Welcome Creek catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	1000 At Steward Road (MS 14)	400 *(Also subject to Table 12.1.4.2)*
Kakanui catchment	For each minimum flow listed below: 1. At Mill Dam (MS 3) for takes downstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site; or 2. At both Mill Dam (MS 3) and Clifton Falls (MS 3a) for takes upstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site.	
Kakanui catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	October to April: 1050~~:~~ ~~1. At Mill Dam (MS 3) for takes downstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site, or~~ ~~2. At both Mill Dam (MS 3) and Clifton Falls (MS 3a) for takes upstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site.~~	October to April: 300
	May to September: 1500~~:~~ ~~1. At Mill Dam (MS 3) for takes downstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site, or~~ ~~2. At both Mill Dam (MS 3) and Clifton Falls (MS 3a) for takes upstream of Clifton Falls monitoring site.~~	May to September: 500
Kakanui catchment (subsequent supplementary allocation blocks)	All subsequent minimum flows corresponding to supplementary allocation blocks in the Kakanui catchment will be based on the following formula: October to April: 1050 + *(*300 x *number of supplementary allocation block*)* May to September: 1500 + *(*500 x *number of supplementary allocation block*)* * 2 for the 2nd, 3 for the 3rd allocation block, and so on.	All subsequent supplementary allocation blocks in the Kakanui catchment will be based on the following sizes: October to April: 300 May to September: 500
Waianakarua catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	311 At Browns Pump (MS 13)	100

Catchment (See Maps B1–B5) & Supplementary Block Number	Minimum Flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow) at the monitoring site(s) ~~that trigger the minimum flow~~ (See Maps B1–B5)	Supplementary Allocation ~~limit~~ Block (litres per second – ~~as calculated on an~~ instantaneous ~~basis~~ flow)
Trotters catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	October to April: 30 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	15
	May to September: 50 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	15
Trotters catchment (second supplementary allocation block)	October to April: 60 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
	May to September: 80 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
Trotters catchment (third supplementary allocation block)	October to April: 90 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
	May to September: 110 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)	30
Shag catchment (first supplementary allocation block)	650 At Craig Road (MS 2) 401 At Goodwood Pump (MS 1)	100
Shag catchment (second supplementary allocation block)	750 At Craig Road (MS2) 501 At Goodwood Pump (MS1)	100

~~**Note:** All minimum flows in Schedule 2A and 2B are instantaneous flows.~~

Decisions: B10a, E1a, A4a

~~2B(a) Schedule of supplementary allocation blocks and specific minimum flows for the Trotters catchment in accordance with Policy 6.4.9(c)~~

~~Catchment See Maps B1–B5 & Supplementary Block Number~~	~~Minimum Flow (litres per second – instantaneous flow) at the monitoring site See Maps B1–B5~~	~~Supplementary Allocation Block (litres per second – instantaneous flow)~~
~~Trotters catchment (first supplementary allocation block)~~	~~October to April: 30 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~15~~
	~~May to September: 50 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~15~~
~~Trotters catchment (second supplementary allocation block)~~	~~October to April: 60 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~30~~
	~~May to September: 80 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~30~~
~~Trotters catchment (third supplementary allocation block)~~	~~October to April: 90 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~30~~
	~~May to September: 110 at Mathesons Weir (MS 12)~~	~~30~~

Decision: E1c

2C Schedule of aquifers where groundwater takes are to be considered as primary allocation, and subject to minimum flows of specified catchments in accordance with Policy 6.4.1A

Aquifer Name	Map Reference	Catchment to which primary or supplementary allocation limits apply, and minimum flows may apply*
Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer	C10	Kakanui catchment*
Shag Alluvium Aquifer	C11	Shag catchment*
Lindis Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C1b	Lindis catchment**
Cardrona Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C1a	Cardrona catchment upstream of the Mount Barker recorder site**
Lowburn Alluvial Ribbon Aquifer	C3	Lowburn Stream**

* as given in Schedules 2A and 2B.
** as provided for by Policies 6.4.2, 6.4.3 and 6.4.9.

Decisions: E1b, E1a

2D Schedule of matters to be considered when setting minimum flows and allocation limits

Primary allocation limits and minimum flows will be added to Schedule 2A, to give effect to the objectives and policies in this Plan, through the plan change process following scientific investigation and consultation with the community and affected parties. The lists in 2D.1 and 2D.2 identify matters to which consideration will be given when setting these flows and limits. The lists are not exhaustive and consideration will be given to these and any other relevant matters.

2D.1 When setting minimum flows in Schedule 2A for a catchment, consideration will be given to the following matters:

(a) Any existing or previous minimum flow regime or residual flow;
(b) The 7-day mean annual low flow;
(c) Interaction among water bodies;
(d) Ecological values, including the need for flow variability;
(e) Demand for water, including community water supplies;
(f) Existing water uses and associated infrastructure;
(g) Environmental, social, cultural, recreational and economic costs and benefits of taking and using water before and after the implementation of a minimum flow regime; and
(h) Any other relevant matter in giving effect to Part 2 of the Resource Management Act.

2D.2 When setting primary allocation limits in Schedule 2A for a catchment, consideration will be given to the following matters:

(a) Amount of water currently allocated as primary allocation;
(b) Amount of water currently taken as primary allocation;
(c) Any other existing taking and using of water;
(d) The 7-day mean annual low flow;
(e) Proposed minimum flow regime;
(f) Possible sources of water;
(g) Acceptable duration and frequency of rationing among consented water users; and
(h) Social and economic benefits of taking and using water.

Note: For catchments not included in Schedule 2A, refer to Policy 6.4.4 for determining minimum flows and Policy 6.4.2 for identification of primary allocation.

3. Schedule of human use values of Otago's aquifers

Schedule 3A identifies the uses of groundwater from particular aquifers in Otago. These aquifers are identified on Maps C9-C12, C15 and D1. Schedule 3B identifies the location of groundwater takes for the purpose of community water supply. The identification of these human use values provides a mechanism for recognising the existence of values which need to be taken into account and given appropriate protection in managing the taking of water and discharge of contaminants (see ~~Policy~~ Policies ~~9.4.1~~ 5.4.2 and 5.4.3). The opportunity to provide such protection will arise when considering applications for resource consents for these activities.

Those that utilise the groundwater do take the risk that it may not be suitable for human consumption due to the presence of contaminants.

Decision: E1h

3A Schedule of human uses of particular aquifers

Aquifer	Map	Values
Lower Waitaki Plains Aquifer	C9 C10	– Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water.
Papakaio Aquifer	D1	– Irrigation
North Otago ~~Volcanics~~ Volcanic Aquifer	C10	– Irrigation
Kakanui-Kauru Alluvium Aquifer	C10	– Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation
Shag Alluvium Aquifer	C11	– Human consumption without treatment – Human consumption with treatment – Stock drinking water supply – Irrigation
Ettrick Basin Aquifer	C12	– Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation
Roxburgh Basin Aquifer	C12	– Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply – Irrigation – Industrial
Lower Taieri Aquifer	C15	– Human consumption without treatment – Stock drinking water supply and farm dairy water – Irrigation – Industrial

Decision: E1b

3B Schedule of ~~Groundwater~~ groundwater takes for the purpose of community water supply

Site No.	**Community Water Supply Takes** (at NZMS 260 Series Map Grid Reference)
1*	Glenorchy Water Supply at E41:459-841.
2*	Arthurs Point Water Supply at E41:686-713.
3*	Dalefield Water Supply at F41:739-724.
4*	Arrowtown Water Supply at F41:806-773.
5*	Cromwell Water Supply at G41:119-671.
6*	Alexandra Water Supplies at: G42:253-444; G42:263-454; and G42:271-442
7*	Roxburgh Water Supply at G43:210132.
8*	Dunedin and Outram Water Supplies at: I44:956-803; I44:956-805; and I44:956-804.
9	Warrington Water Supplies at: I44:221-982; and I44:224-980
10*	East Taieri Water Supply at I44:007-763.
11*	Owaka Water Supply at H46:533-124.

* Point of take located within 100 metres of a surface water body.

Decisions: E1b, A2c

4. Schedule of specified restrictions on the exercise of permits to take groundwater

This schedule sets out restrictions that apply to the taking of groundwater from certain aquifers in Otago.

Schedule 4A identifies annual allocation volumes for the taking of groundwater from aquifers indentified in the C-series maps, as provided by Policy 6.4.10A(a) of this Plan. Schedule 4B identifies water levels at which the taking of groundwater will be restricted in accordance with Policy 6.4.10A(b) of this Plan.

4A Maximum allocation volumes for groundwater takes from aquifers

Aquifer Name	Map Reference	Maximum Allocation Volume (million cubic metres per year)
Note: This table will be added to through future plan change processes.		

Decision: E1a

4B Restriction levels for groundwater takes

~~The schedule~~ Schedule 4B identifies water levels at which the taking of groundwater will be restricted, and ~~in accordance with Policies 9.4.4, 9.4.5 and 9.4.6 of this Plan. It also~~ identifies the nature of the restriction, in terms of a reduction in the take of water authorised by water permits, and the objectives of the restrictions with their associated anticipated environmental results.

The aquifer maximum height refers to the historic record of the water level or pressure head after the recharge season. Note that the areas over which the restrictions apply are shown on Maps D1 - D4.

Aquifer See Maps D1–D4	Aquifer Reference Bore See Maps D1–D4	Aquifer maximum height (metres above datum)	Restriction levels (m)		
			25% restriction or ~~allocation committee~~ response in terms of Council recognised rationing regime*	50% restriction	100% restriction
~~Papakaio~~	~~Enfield School Bore~~	~~167.2~~	~~165.2~~	~~164.7~~	~~164.2~~
North Otago ~~Volcanics~~ Volcanic – Deborah	Websters Well	130.8	128.8	128.3	127.8
North Otago Volcanic~~s~~ – Waiareka	Isbister's Well	124.2	122.2	121.7	121.2
Lower Taieri – West	Momona Bore	101.24	100	99.5	99
Lower Taieri – East	Harleys Well, Piezo. 2	112.5	110.5	110.0	109.5
Ettrick Basin	Calder Bore	172.29	170.29	169.79	169.29
Roxburgh Basin (Coal Creek Terrace)	White-Hall Bore	185.5	184	183.75	183.5

* When the aquifer reaches this level there shall be either a 25% restriction or a water allocation committee, appointed by the Otago Regional Council, will implement a protocol to take all practical steps to curb the decline in the aquifer level so as to avoid a 50% restriction. If there is no water allocation committee or the water allocation committee does not use a protocol approved by the Council, the 25% water restriction will apply.

Aquifer	Management Objectives	Environmental Result
~~Papakaio~~	~~Mean quarterly static pressure maintained to within 3.0 metres of Aquifer Maximum~~	~~• Surface water flows (Kakanui particularly) are not adversely affected;~~ ~~• Existing free flowing artesian conditions are retained over the greater part of the aquifer;~~ ~~• Aquifer yield is maintained;~~ ~~• Any risk of land subsidence and/or irreversible compression of the aquifer is avoided.~~
North Otago ~~Volcanics~~ Volcanic – Deborah	Mean 30-day static pressure maintained to within 3.0 metres of mean sea level (Otago datum)	• Surface water flows (Awamoa and Waiareka Creeks particularly) are not adversely affected; • Bore interference is minimised; • Aquifer yield is maintained; • Risk of sea water intrusion is minimised.
North Otago ~~Volcanics~~ Volcanic – Waiareka	Mean 30-day static pressure maintained to within 3.0 metres of mean sea level (Otago datum)	• Surface water flows (Awamoa and Waiareka Creeks particularly) are not adversely affected; • Bore interference is minimised; • Aquifer yield is maintained; • Risk of sea water intrusion is minimised.

SCHEDULE 4: RESTRICTIONS ON THE EXERCISE OF PERMITS TO TAKE GROUNDWATER

Aquifer	Management Objectives	Environmental Result
Lower Taieri – West	Mean 30-day static pressure maintained to within -1.0 metres of mean sea level (Otago datum)	• Surface water flows are not adversely affected • Aquifer yield is maintained; • Bore interference is minimised; • Any risk of land subsidence and/or irreversible compression of the aquifer is avoided; • Any risk of sea water intrusion is minimised.
Lower Taieri - East	Mean 30-day static pressure maintained to within 3.0 metres of Aquifer Maximum	• Surface water flows (Silver Stream particularly) are not adversely affected; • Aquifer yield is maintained; • Bore interference is minimised; • Any risk of land subsidence and/or irreversible compression of the aquifer is avoided; • Any risk of sea water intrusion is minimised.
Ettrick Basin	Mean 30-day static water level maintained to within 3.0 metres of Aquifer Maximum	• Surface water flows (Benger Burn particularly) are not adversely affected; • Aquifer yield is maintained; • Bore interference is minimised.
Roxburgh Basin (Coal Creek Terrace	Mean 7-day static water level maintained to within 2.0 metres of Aquifer Maximum	• Aquifer yield is maintained • Bore interference is minimised

Decisions: E1b, B12c

5. Schedule of limits to instantaneous take of groundwater

5A Schedule of equations to determine stream depletion effects of the take of groundwater

~~This schedule identifies formulae that will be used to establish the limits of acceptable bore interference in accordance with Policy 9.4.7 of this Plan. These limits will be placed as conditions on permits to take groundwater, and may limit the instantaneous take of groundwater from any one bore in order to maintain existing access to water.~~

~~**Formulae that will be used to establish the limits of acceptable bore interference:**~~

~~**Unconfined conditions:**~~

~~$I \quad T\ (2 \times 10^{-4})$ ie. 0.2m per 1000m²/day~~

~~**Confined conditions:**~~

~~$I \quad T\ (2 \times 10^{-3})$ ie. 2m per 1000m²/day~~

~~Where:~~
~~I = permitted interference in metres~~
~~T = transmissivity in square metres per day~~

~~**Bore interference**~~	~~The reduced ability of users in a localised area to take water from a bore, due to the taking of water from another bore, reducing the pressure and/or the level of groundwater.~~
~~**Confined aquifer**~~	~~Any aquifer where the groundwater is confined under pressure by an overlying strata which is impermeable or semi-permeable. If the confining layer is penetrated, groundwater will rise above the bottom of the confining layer. (See Artesian pressure.)~~
~~**Unconfined aquifer**~~	~~Any aquifer in which the upper limit of the zone of saturation is at atmospheric pressure.~~
~~**Transmissivity**~~	~~The degree to which an aquifer allows water to pass through it.~~

Requirement to determine stream depletion on surface water

The Bekesi and Hodges[1] equations are used to determine whether a proposed groundwater take may have an effect on nearby surface water that is greater than 5 litres per second.

The Bekesi and Hodges equations are preferred to other equations reported in the literature as they are less demanding of hydrogeological data, and allow a reasonable relationship to be calculated empirically, which can be transposed to determine the threshold distance between the point of groundwater take and the surface water body. These equations consider pumping occurs over 30 days, and assumes a 90 percentile confidence. Which equation is used depends on the proposed maximum rate of take (Q in litres per second):

Where 5 l/s ≤ Q ≤ 25 l/s	$r = 65 \times Q$
Where Q > 25 l/s	$r = 1138 \times \log Q$

r = distance between abstraction structure and surface water body (metres)

If *r* is greater than the actual distance from the point of groundwater take to the surface water body, then the stream depletion effect is considered to be greater than 5 litres per second. However, there may be exceptions to the empirical relationship (see below).

Calculation of stream depletion effect and allocation to surface water

The Jenkins[2] equations are used to calculate the stream depletion effects (or Q_s) which will be considered against the available allocation of the relevant surface water body.

$$\mathbf{Q_s = Q_w erfc(U)}$$

$$\mathbf{U = -(r^2 S/4Tt)}$$

Where:

Q_s	is the rate of stream depletion (cubic length per time)
Q_w	is the pumping rate of the well (cubic length per time)
r	is the perpendicular distance from the point of groundwater take to the surface water body (length)
S	is the storativity (or specific yield) of the aquifer (dimensionless)
T	is the transmissivity of the aquifer (square length per time)
t	is time
'erfc(U)'	refers to the Complementary Error Function of U

Where subsurface intake structures have a bore head in a different location from the position of the intake screen, the closest part of the intake screen or gallery should be used for the purpose of measuring the distance to the surface water body in terms of Policy 6.4.1A(c) and the equations set out above.

Situations where stream depletion effect is unlikely

There are a number of situations where the stream depletion effect of groundwater is not likely to be valid; these include hydrological factors related to the depth of the bore screen. In addition, the Bekesi and Hodges, or Jenkins equations have situations where they are less valid or have violated their basic assumptions. The situations referred to above are summarised as follows:

Where the adjacent surface water body;

(a) Has an impermeable bed; or
(b) Is ephemeral, or dry for extended periods, containing or conveying water only in episodes of high runoff; or
(c) Is separated from the underlying water table by an unsaturated zone, decoupling the interaction into a one-way loss of surface water from the surface water body.

Where the groundwater system;

(a) Has very low permeability (e.g. schist fractured rock aquifers. Although the low permeability will calculate a very low stream depletion effect in the Jenkins equation, this is not considered in the empirical Bekesi and Hodges equations); or
(b) Has very steep gradients or perched water tables adjacent to surface water body boundaries; or
(c) Does not influence surface water due to the depth of the bore or well screen.

These situations are often not immediately discernable and may require a higher level of assessment to distinguish the nature of connection between groundwater and surface water. Where an applicant seeks that Policy 6.4.1A should not apply, and that the take should be considered as a full groundwater take under the provisions of 12.2, then the applicant may apply to take groundwater as a discretionary activity under Rule 12.2.4.1.

Use of analytical equations other than the Jenkins Equation:

The use of analytical equations will be accepted over the equations given above, when an applicant can clearly demonstrate:

1) That the analytical equation is derived from, or is otherwise comparable to, the Jenkins Equation; and
2) That this equation is in common use for the purpose, and shares a degree of acceptance in such use amongst groundwater professionals.

Use of numerical groundwater flow models:

The use of numerical groundwater flow models will be accepted over the equations given above, when an applicant can clearly demonstrate:

1) That the numerical method is validated or potentially validated at a generic level against either the Theis Equation or the Jenkins Equation; and
2) That the model is in common use for the purpose, and shares a degree of acceptance in such use among groundwater professionals.

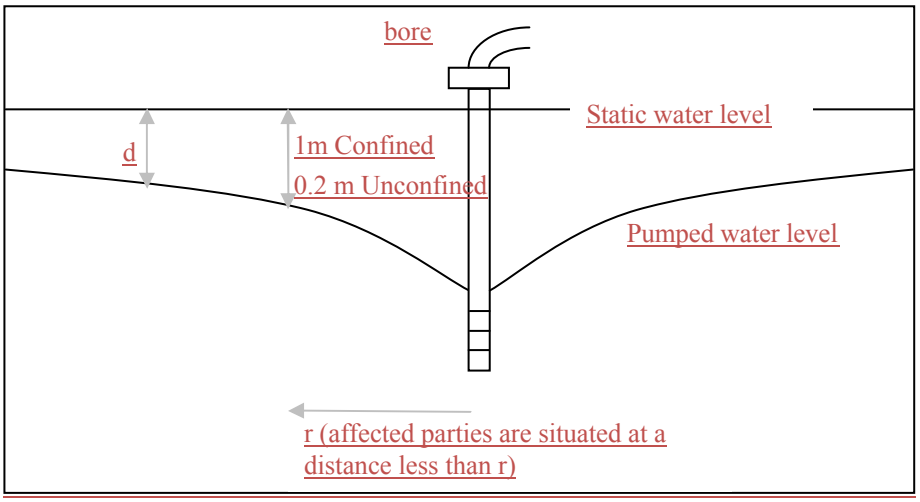
[1] Bekesi, G; and Hodges, S. 2006: The protection of groundwater dependent ecosystems in Otago, New Zealand. Hydrogeology Journal. Vol. 14, No 8, December, 2006.

pp 1696–1701.

[2] Jenkins, C T, 1977: Computation of rate and volume of stream depletion by wells. In "Techniques of Water Resource Investigations of the United States Geological Survey". Chapter D1, Book 4, 3rd Edition. USGS, Department of Interior, Washington DC.

5B Schedule of method for identifying groundwater takes potentially affected by bore interference

This schedule is the method for identifying parties likely to be affected by bore interference when a new application to take groundwater is received. The significance of any interference may result in limits being placed through conditions on permits to take groundwater, depending on distance from another bore, and may limit the instantaneous take of groundwater from any one bore in order to maintain existing access to water.



The radius will be determined using a significant interference of d ≥ 1 m for confined aquifers or d ≥ 0.2 m for unconfined aquifers, and the 'Theis' equation:

$d = QW(u)/4\pi T$ where $u=r^2S/4Tt$

Also where:

d is the interference
Q is the pumping rate from the bore
W(u) is the "well equation", approximated by a Taylor series:

$-0.5772 - \ln(u) + u - u2/2\cdot2! + u3/3\cdot3! - \ldots$

r is the distance from the pumping bore
S is specific yield/storativity of the unconfined/confined aquifer
t is the time or duration of pumping
T is the transmissivity of the aquifer

For clarification, the variables required for the 'Theis' equation will be quantified as follows:

Q	from the consent application: maximum daily volume
r	from maps, aerial photos, or preferably GPS coordinates
T and S	from pumping tests or conservative estimates
t (in days)	from consent application: maximum annual volume divided by the maximum daily volume

If a variable cannot be estimated from the consent application or the applicant did not supply the information, the Council will estimate it on an environmentally conservative basis.

Decisions: E1a, A5g

6. Schedule of water bodies where damming is prohibited

This schedule identifies water bodies in Otago, or parts of water bodies, in which the damming of water is prohibited in accordance with Policy 8.5.2, and Rules 12.3.1.1, 12.3.1.2, and 12.3.1.3 of this Plan. Note that the damming of water for stockwater supply purposes is not prohibited in some of the identified water bodies. Such management of these water bodies is required by the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Water body	Grid references	Type of dam prohibited
Kawarau River main stem from Scrubby Stream to the Lake Wakatipu control gates.	F41:035680 to F41:738667	Any dam.
Shotover River main stem	At or about F41:765680 to E40:662173	Any dam.
Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with Beans Burn.	At or about E41:438853 to E40:375077	Any dam.
Rees River main stem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with Hunter Creek.	At or about E41:448852 to E40:499117	Any dam.
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Lake Reid.	At or about E40:435975; E41:444963 to E40:450918	Any dam.
Lake Wanaka and Upper Clutha River/Mata-Au	F40:050089 to F40:088067	All dams other than for the duration of an emergency.
Pomahaka River, including its tributaries, from its sources to its confluence with the Clutha River/Mata-Au.	Confluence at G45:447453	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.
Waipahi River from its source to its confluence with the Pomahaka River.	Confluence at G45:194520	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.
Lower Clutha River/Mata-Au from its confluence with the Pomahaka River to the sea at the mouths of the Matau and Koau Branches.	G45:447453 to H46:667263 and H46:642239	All dams other than for stockwater supply purposes.

7. Schedule of water bodies sensitive to suction dredge mining

This schedule identifies water bodies in Otago, or parts of water bodies, that are sensitive to bed disturbance caused by suction dredge mining due to their unique value for fish spawning or rearing, or their importance for water supply. Suction dredge mining in the identified water bodies, and during any identified time period, will require a resource consent under Rule 13.5.3.1 of this Plan (see Policy 8.6.3). The water bodies identified support values that need to be taken into account when considering consent applications to suction dredge. See Maps E1-E9 for areas affected and their numbers.

North Otago subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Waianakarua River	Native fish diversity	Catchment upstream of J42:370472	1

Maniototo subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Ewe Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:808587	2
Kye Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I42:946585	3
Sow Burn	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:785532	4
Pig Burn	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:828532	5
Taieri River (Between Hore's Bridge and Long Point) *From 1 March to 31 October*	Fisheries values	Main stem between H42:713380 and H42:744352	6
Waimonga Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:542308	7
Waimonga Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:542299	8
Totara Creek	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H42:620342 and 553304	9
Linn Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H42:655323	10
McPhees Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:729211	11
McHardys Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:710151	12
Shepherds Hut Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:645123	13
Unnamed tributary of the Logan Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:614115	14
Taieri River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:549027	15

Central Otago subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Cardrona River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of F40:087067	16
Unnamed tributary of the Clutha River/Mata-Au	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G40:207933	17
Cluden Stream	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G40:342942	18
Dunstan Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:545745	19
Manuherikia River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:661902	20
Gate Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H41:664901	21

Central Otago subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Earnscleugh or Fraser River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G42:160507	22
Earnscleugh or Fraser River	Fisheries values	Main stem between G42:200490 and Clutha River/Mata-Au	23
Cranky Woman Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H42:572378	24
Manor Burn Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of G43:447243	25

Lakes subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
All rivers flowing into Lake Wakatipu	Fisheries values	-	26
All rivers flowing into Lake Wanaka	Fisheries values	-	27
All rivers flowing into Lake Hawea	Fisheries values	-	28
Skippers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of E41:690896	29
Moke Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of E41:609701 (both branches)	30
Lake Kirkpatrick outlet stream	Fisheries values	Main stem between Lake Kirkpatrick and Moke Lake	31
Mill Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of Lake Hayes	32
Hayes Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between Lake Hayes and Kawarau River	33
Nevis River	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of F41:979644	34

Roxburgh subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Benger Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G43:253006	35
Tima Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G44:293999	36
Unnamed tributary of Lake Onslow	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G43:451133	37

Strath Taieri subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Cap Burn	Fisheries values	Main stem between I42:959462 and 955462	38
Mare Burn	Fisheries values	Main stem between I42:971432 and 975432	39
Lug Creek	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H43:880257	40
Stoney Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H43:712088	41
Nenthorn Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I43:944054	42

Waikouaiti/Lammermoor subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Deep Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H43:665037	43
Deep Stream	Native fish habitat Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H44:683996	44
Lee Stream/Canton Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H44:761909 and 701915	45
Black Rock Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:744883	46
Smugglers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:936830	47
Taieri River	Water supply values (land instability threat to water pipeline)	Main stem between I44:009868 and 976830	48
Christmas Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between I44:038953 and 039955	49
Three O'clock Stream	Fisheries values	Main stem between I44:024974 and Taieri River	50
Three O'clock Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between I43:111096 and 077138	51
Waikouaiti River	Native fish habitat Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I43:232079	52

Coastal subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Burns Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:158883	53
Jeffersons Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:160873	54
Williams Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:159870	55
Sullivans Dam intake	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:172863	56
Water of Leith, West Branch	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:164857	57
Morrisons Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:160843	58
Nicols Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:153833	59
Ross Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:152820	60
Orokonui Creek	Native fish diversity	Catchment upstream of I44:221921	61
Wetherstons Creek (Waitati River tributary)	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:201882	62
Rossville reservoir intake	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:233865	63
Sawyers Bay Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:235851	64
Unnamed tributary of Otago Harbour	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:277825	65
Weipers Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of I44:281792	66
Big Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H45:864482	67

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:553814	68
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:563813	69
Stony Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:606839	70

SCHEDULE 7: WATER BODIES SENSITIVE TO SUCTION DREDGE MINING

Taieri/Clutha Plains subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Nardoo Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:649831	71
North West Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:697840	72
Unnamed tributary of Pioneer Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:703752	73
Unnamed tributary of Lake Mahinerangi	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:722768	74
Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Main stem between H44:737737 and 725736	75
Unnamed tributary of Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:724728	76
Unnamed tributary of Shepherd Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:732732	77
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:749756	78
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:765750	79
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:780741	80
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:777756	81
Unnamed tributary of Waipori River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:782746	82
Mill Creek	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H44:833730	83
Verter Burn	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:794799	84
Silver Stream	Native fish diversity Water Supply	Catchment upstream of I44:039789	85
Meggat Burn	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of H45:744693	86
Tokomairiro River West Branch	Fisheries values	Catchment upstream of H45:747487	87
Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H45:647407	88
Unnamed tributary of Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:660392	89
Saddle Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:657389	90
McCrosties Drain	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:654372	91
Lake Tuakitoto	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:687369	92

Southwest Otago subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Tuapeka River	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of G44:491742	93
All streams flowing into the Phoenix Dam	Water Supply	Catchment upstream of Dam at H44:545755	94
Waitahuna River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H44:624790	95
Tuapeka Creek	Fisheries values	Main stem between H44:508721 and Tuapeka River	96
Tuapeka River	Fisheries values	Catchment between G45:471669 and Clutha River/Mata-Au, including all tributaries of this reach	97
Waitahuna River	Fisheries values	Main stem between H45:619659 and Clutha River/Mata-Au	98
Pomahaka River	Native fish habitat Fisheries values Water Supply	Catchment upstream of G45:445453	99
Waiwera River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:283301	100

Catlins subregion			
Water body	**Values**	**Grid References**	**Area No.**
Unnamed tributary of Mokoreta River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:214247	101
Catlins River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:274228	102
Unnamed tributary of Catlins River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:380169	103
Frank Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G46:400141	104
Matai Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:404059	105
Unnamed Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:457046	106
MacKenzie Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:469051	107
Waitere Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of G47:485043	108
Unnamed tributary of Catlins Lake	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H47:561074	109
Unnamed tributary of Owaka River	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:553143	110
Burnt Scrub Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:595183	111
Unnamed Creek	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:600175	112
Nugget Stream	Native fish habitat	Catchment upstream of H46:631160	113

8. Schedule of requirements for discharge of animal wastes

This schedule establishes requirements for the discharge of contaminants from any waste collection system onto production land. If these requirements are met, in addition to the conditions set out in Rule 12.8.1.3, such a discharge is a permitted activity under this Plan.

The schedule specifies a maximum application depth, a maximum application rate and a minimum return period.

- The **maximum application depth** is the amount of animal waste that can be applied at any one time.
- The **maximum application rate** is the speed at which animal waste can be applied.
- The **minimum return period** is the time which should expire before animal waste is reapplied to the same land.

These requirements vary depending on the soil type as each soil type has a different capacity to assimilate contaminants. The requirements will ensure that this assimilative capacity is not exceeded by the discharge of animal waste.

ANIMAL WASTE APPLICATION FOR VARIOUS SOIL TYPES UNDER PASTURE COVER			
Soil Type	**Maximum Application Depth at any One Time**	**Maximum Application Rate**	**Minimum Return Period**
Sand and loamy sand	25mm	32mm/hr	15 days
Sandy loam and fine sandy loam	25mm	20mm/hr	15days
Silt and sandy silt loam	25mm	17mm/hr	20 days
Clay and clay loam	25mm	10mm/hr	20 days
Peat	25mm	17mm/hr	15 days

Note: The values in this table are based on soil moisture under 50% saturation. Any person applying animal waste on soils exceeding 50% saturation will need to adjust their application depth and rate accordingly, to avoid breaching rule conditions.

The following conversions may be useful:

- Amounts in mm to litres per hectare: multiply by 10,000.
- Amounts in mm/hr to litres per hectare per hour: multiply by 10,000.

9. Schedule of significant wetlands

This schedule identifies Otago's significant wetlands in conjunction with Maps F1-F60. The schedule identifies the Type A and Type B values for each wetland. The objective of this Plan is to maintain or enhance the identified values through the management of water use and land use activities.

The values identified in the schedule include:

A1 Habitat for nationally or internationally rare or threatened species or communities;
A2 Critical habitat for the life cycles of indigenous fauna which are dependent on wetlands;
A3 High diversity of habitat types;
A4 Wetland with a high degree of naturalness;
A5 Wetland scarce in Otago in terms of its ecological or physical character; and
A6 Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.

B1 Wetland with high diversity of indigenous flora and fauna;
B2 Wetland which is regionally significant habitat for waterfowl; and
B3 Performing a hydrological function including maintaining water quality or low flows, or reducing flood flows.

Note: Criteria A1-A6 represent the values identified in Policy 10.4.1, while B1-B3 represent the values identified in Policy 10.4.3 of this Plan (see Chapter 10).

Index to Otago's Significant Wetlands

Wetland Name	Map No
Akatore Creek	F46
All Day Bay Lagoon	F29
Aramoana Salt Marsh (Upper)	F39
Belmont Saline Management Area	F19
Big Boggy and Little Boggy Wetlands	F3
Black Swamp	F48
Blackcleugh Burn Wetlands	F47
Blackman's Saline Management Area	F9
Bungtown Swamp	F41
Catlins River Wetland	F58
Chapman Road Saline Area	F10
Clutha Mouth Lagoon	F54
Conroy's Dam Saline Management Area	F10
Conroy's Road Saline Areas	F10
Devils Bridge Wetland	F28
Diamond Lake/Earnslaw Burn Wetland Management Area	F5
Dingle Lagoon	F2
Dunard Saline Management Area	F15
Dunvegan Pond	F49
False Islet Wetland Management Area	F57
Fortification Creek Wetland Management Area	F22
Galloway No 1 Saline Area	F16
Galloway No 2 Saline Area	F16
Glenorchy Lagoon	F5
Glyn Wye Wetland Management Area	F23
Goodwood Saltmarsh	F33
Great Moss Swamp	F21
Hawksbury Lagoon	F34
Hoopers Inlet Swamp	F39
Hukihuki Swamp	F60
Kaikorai Lagoon	F38
Kemps Road Lagoon	F31
Kirkwoods Creek Wetland Management Area	F4
Lake Hayes Margin	F6
Lake Tuakitoto Wetlands Complex	F51
Lamb Hill Wetlands	F35
Lenz Reserve Wetlands	F59
Lower Coutts Gully Swamp	F45
Maclennan River Podocarp Swamp	F56
Makarora Flat Wetland	F1
Matukituki Valley Wetland Management Area	F3
Maungatua Summit Wetland Management Area	F40
Moa Creek Saline Area	F17
Moke Lake Bog	F7
Murray's Road Saline Management Area	F25
Nenthorn Ridge Wetland Management Area	F27
Nevis Plateau Wetland Management Area	F13
Okia Flat Wetland Management Area	F39
Otanomomo Tuatiki Reserve	F52
Otokia Wetlands	F43
Paddys Rock Ephemeral Tarn	F24
Papatowai Scenic Reserve Wetland	F56
Patearoa Saline Area	F19
Pioneer Wetland Management Area	F41

Wetland Name	Map No
Puerua Wetland	F55
Red Bank Wetland Management Area	F27
Rockdale Saline Area	F14
Schoolhouse Flat Wetland Area	F8
Shag River Estuary Swamp	F32
Southern Garvie Mountains Wetland Management Area	F13
Sutton Salt Lake Wetland Management Area	F26
Swampy Summit Wetland Area	F36
Tahakopa Bay Podocarp Swamp	F56
Tahakopa Peat Bog	F56
Taieri River Mouth Wetland Management Area	F44
Tautuku Wetland Complex	F59
Tokomairiro River Swamp	F50
Tomahawk Lagoon	F37
Totara Creek Saline Management Area	F19
Trig Q Ephemeral Pool	F30
Upper Taieri Wetlands Complex	F18-F21
Von Valley Wetland Management Area	F11 and F12
Waikouaiti Estuary Wetland	F34
Waipori Boot Wetland	F42
Waipori/Waihola Wetlands Complex	F42
Waitepeka Swamp	F53
Welcome Creek	F30A
Woodbine Wetland Area	F5

Akatore Creek (Map F46)

Physical Description: Extensive area of saltmarsh and swamp above coastal marine area south of Akatore Creek. Altitude 5-10m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
A high degree of naturalness	A4
Scarce wetland type; a complete sequence of indigenous vegetation from the high tide mark through saltmarsh and flax to tall *Leptospermum* - *Carmichaelia* - *Olearia* scrub. Scrub considered an intrinsic part of the wetland and the only example of its type in the Ecological Region.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

All Day Bay Lagoon (Map F29)

Physical Description: Brackish water lagoon with swampy rush, sedge and succulent herb margins. Protected by QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant since 1993. A Management Statement was prepared in 1994. Area 10 ha.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High diversity of fauna. Habitat for shoveller and grey ducks, grey teal, oyster catcher, pied and black stilt. Also visited by royal spoonbill, glossy ibis and white heron.	B1

Aramoana Salt Marsh (Upper) (Map F39)

Physical Description: Upper saltmarsh and flax-dominated swamp areas, above the coastal marine area at Aramoana.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High degree of naturalness. Saltmarsh is largely intact with a complete vegetation sequence from tidal to dryland - a feature which most other saltmarshes in Otago no longer retain, as the highest part of the sequence has usually been reclaimed or otherwise destroyed. There is also no *Spartina* at Aramoana.	A4
Scarce type of wetland. The saltmarsh grades into a jointed rush *Leptocarpus similis* - saltmarsh ribbonwood *Plagianthus divaricatus* community. Beyond the salt influence, some of the wet dune hollows (known as "slacks") contain a swamp variously dominated by the tall native flax *Phormium tenax*, and by native rush and sedge communities.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Belmont Saline Management Area (Map F19)

Physical Description: Salt pan area on low terrace near Belmont. Included in 21 ha Belmont Saline Area Reserve. Altitude 395 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Wetland scarce in terms of ecological character; one of only two sites at which the salt tolerant plant *Sarcocornia quinqueflora* is recorded in Central Otago. Other saline-soil plants present and a distinctive salt-adapted moth fauna.	A5

Big Boggy and Little Boggy Wetlands (Map F3)

Physical Description: A spring-fed lagoon (with flax-covered islands) and a small raupo-fringed pond on the Upper Matukituki River flats, Western Otago. Altitude 305m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened banded dotterel *Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus*.	A1
High diversity of habitat types. Important feeding and breeding sites for waterfowl and wading birds including paradise shelduck, grey duck (breeding), pukeko and pied stilt. South Island pied oystercatcher, white faced heron and marsh crake also use the wetland.	B1
High degree of naturalness. Largely unmodified wetland system which is self-sustaining because of its spring-fed character.	A4

Black Swamp (Map F48)

Physical Description: A cushion-plant bog with large peat dome, wire rush, sedges, herbs and shrubs, 14 km northwest of Milton. Black Swamp Conservation Area administered by Department of Conservation covers part of the bog. Area 2.5 ha.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type; very little of this type of wetland left in the Otago Region.	A5

Blackcleugh Burn Wetlands (Map F47)

Physical Description: Several small areas of copper tussock wetlands.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High species diversity; copper tussock and a wide range of shrubs, herbs and invertebrate species	B1

Blackman's Saline Management Area (Map F9)

Physical Description: A small saline area on Earnscleugh Station. Altitude 320m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of the threatened species *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae-zelandiae*. A large area of *Myosurus* surrounds the bare salty area.	A1
Scarce wetland type. An extensive community of salt tolerant plants including *Atriplex buchananii*. Distinctive lepidoptera and moth fauna associated with salty soils and salt tolerant plants. One of few saline sites in the region.	A5

Bungtown Swamp (Map F41)

Physical Description: A small area of swamp, including a peat dome. Administered by the Department of Conservation as a scientific reserve.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce type of wetland; raised peat dome with *Sphagnum*, wire rush, bog pine and *Hebe* sp. growing on it.	A5

Catlins River Wetland (Map F58)

Physical Description: A large area of shrub wetland, with kahikatea - silver beech remnants, on each side of the lower Catlins River. Area 100 ha. Altitude 5 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Wetland scarce in region in terms of its physical/ecological character.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6
High diversity of flora.	B1

Chapman Road Saline Area (Map F10)

Physical Description: A small saline area near Alexandra. Altitude 150m. A scientific reserve (8.4 ha). Type site for Manorburn soil.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plants *Lepidium kirkii, Isolepis basilaris* and *Puccinellia* 'Central Otago'.	A1
Scarce type of wetland. Salt tolerant plants including *Apium filiforme, Samolus repens* (one of only two inland sites) in shallow small grassy gully along with *Juncus gerardii, Atriplex buchananii* and *Puccinellia* spp. (best area of inland salt grasses, 4 species, one of which is endemic). *Lepidium kirkii* grows on a salty hillslope at the southeast corner. Distinctive saline soil moth fauna.	A5

Clutha Mouth Lagoon (Map F54)

Physical Description: Old river channel at mouth of Clutha River/Mata-Au.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened banded dotterel *Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus.*	A1
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6
An important loafing, roosting and feeding area for a variety of waders (eg banded dotterel, pied stilt and pectoral sandpiper) and waterfowl (grey teal, shoveller duck).	B2

Conroy's Dam Saline Management Area (Map F10)

Physical Description: Salt pan on planar valley footslope adjacent to Conroy's dam. Part of 17 ha Conroy's Dam Reserve which includes the 15 ha Conroy's Dam impoundment. Altitude 280m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of the threatened plants *Lepidium kirkii,* and *Crassula tetramera*.	A1
Scarce wetland type. One of few truly saline soil types (very high conductivity), and alkaline. Distinctive salt-adapted moth fauna present.	A5

Conroy's Road Saline Areas (Map F10)

Physical Description: Small salt pan areas to the east of the intersection of Conroy's Road and Shepherd Station Road, near Alexandra.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The threatened species *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae-zelandiae, Puccinellia raroflorens* (type locality).	A1
Scarce wetland type; salt tolerant plants, an endemic stonefly and some uncommon moths (see Grove 1994, p73).	A5

Devils Bridge Wetland (Map F28)

Physical Description: Previously an ephemeral lake, after installation of a weir this area has become a permanent lagoon protected by a QEII covenant. It provides important habitat for many wetland bird species and is one of the few habitats of this type in North Otago.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High diversity of fauna. Habitat for marsh crake, banded rail, Australian coot, NZ scaup, white heron, white faced heron, pied stilt, grey teal, black swan, pukeko and others.	B1

Diamond Lake/Earnslaw Burn Wetland Management Area (Map F5)

Physical Description: Swampland adjacent to Diamond Lake and Lake Reid in Rees River Catchment, 12km north of Glenorchy. Administered by Department of Conservation as Diamond Lake/Lake Reid Wildlife Management Reserve. Altitude 330-350m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened banded dotterel and black-fronted tern.	A1
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6
High diversity of fauna. Provides nesting and feeding habitat for paradise ducks, black swan, pied stilt, black-backed gull, South Island pied oystercatcher and shags.	B1

Dingle Lagoon (Map F2)

Physical Description: The margins of a shallow lake.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl.	B2

Dunard Saline Management Area (Map F15)

Physical Description: Saline area on flat terrace on Moutere Station. Altitude 330m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type; native salt tolerant plants including *Puccinellia* sp., *Atriplex buchananii* and *Ceratocephalus pungens*, the native herb *Acaenia buchananii* plus the threatened herb *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae-zelandiae.*	A5

Dunvegan Pond (Map F49)

Physical Description: Small pond on valley floor.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened Australasian bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus*.	A1

False Islet Wetland Management Area (Map F57)

Physical Description: Moist hollow on sandflats behind foredunes.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of the threatened plant species *Mazus* 'False Islet' and the "insufficiently known" species *Libertia peregrinans.*	A1

Fortification Creek Wetland Management Area (Map F22)

Physical Description: An extensive wetland area covering the slow moving meandering lower reaches of Fortification Stream and the Teviot River, associated oxbow lakes and ponds, and adjacent sedge and red tussock wetlands on the alluvial valley floor in an open flat basin of the Upland Plateau land unit. Also covers the swamps at the inlets to Lake Onslow.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened banded dotterel *Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus*. The threatened plant species *Cardamine* 'tarn' and *Ranunculus ternatifolius* also present.	A1
Scarce wetland type. One of the last remaining relatively uniform areas of red tussock wetland combined with meandering streams.	A5
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl.	B2

Galloway No 1 Saline Area (Map F16)

Physical Description: Saline site on high terraces on true left of the Manuherikia River at the southern end of the Raggedy Range. Altitude 220-350m.

The site contains a fully representative Lepidoptera fauna of saline soils and salt tolerant vegetation of Central Otago. Several uncommon insects occur, feeding on the salt tolerant plants. A rare grasshopper is found on the rocky ground above the saline area (Patrick 1989).

Wetland Value	Value Type
The only know location of *Lepidium sisymbrioides* subsp. *matau. Lepidium kirkii* and other salt-tolerant species are found at the site.	A1

Galloway No 2 Saline Area (Map F16)

Physical Description: A saline site approximately 1 km to the east of the Galloway No. 1 site, adjacent to the Crawford Hills Road.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The threatened salt tolerant plant *Lepidium kirkii* is present, along with populations of *Plantago coronopus* and *Atriplex buchananii*. Also the rare grasshopper *Sigaus minutus.*	A1

Glenorchy Lagoon (Map F5)

Physical Description: Lagoon immediately north of Glenorchy. Administered by Department of Conservation as a Wildlife Management Reserve.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl and swamp birds, including paradise/mallard/grey ducks, black swan, grey teal, pukeko and oystercatcher.	B2

Glyn Wye Wetland Management Area (Map F23)

Physical Description: Medium turf ephemeral tarns on broad ridge crest, east of Middlemarch. Cover approx 10% of 70 ha area. Altitude 300 - 320m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Tarns contain three threatened herbaceous species: *Cardamine* 'tarn' which is listed as endangered, and *Gratiola nana* and *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae-zelandiae* which are listed as rare (Cameron *et al* 1995). Occurrence of *Pratia perpusilla*, locally rare within Macraes Ecological District	A1
High diversity of indigenous rushes, herbs and other species. The best and most extensive examples of medium turf ephemeral tarns within the Fault Block Ridges land system (see Bibby 1997 for details).	B1

Goodwood Saltmarsh (Map F33)

Physical Description: Saltmarsh above coastal marine area near mouth of Pleasant River.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type; saltmarsh community with *Sarcocornia quinqueflora* (glasswort), *Puccinellia* spp. *Atriplex* spp. *Selliera radicans*, *Samolus repens* and jointed rush.	A5

Great Moss Swamp (Map F21)

Physical Description: Remnant of previously more extensive 500 ha swamp flooded by the Logan Burn Reservoir. Altitude 820m. Areas of red and silver tussock and sedge tussock *Schoenus pauciflorus* and *Sphagnum squarrosum.* One of few remaining subalpine swamp areas in the Rock and Pillar Ecological District.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Deschampsia caespitosa* and *Carex secta* var. *tenuiculmus*	A1

Hawksbury Lagoon (Map F34)

Physical Description: A shallow fresh-brackish water lagoon at the mouth of the Hawksbury River, adjacent to the town of Waikouaiti. Little tidal influence within the lagoon as a causeway along the channel entrance restricts the entry of seawater. Most of the lagoon is part of the Hawksbury Wildlife Reserve. An adjacent lagoon which is not included within the wetland, is identified as a Coastal Protection Area within the Regional Plan: Coast. Area 63 ha. Altitude 0 - 2m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The wetland is of cultural importance to Kai Tahu as a mahika kai site where fish (especially eels and inanga) and waterfowl were traditionally harvested.	A6
High diversity of bird and fish life, including the following species: white heron, white-faced heron, royal spoonbill, pied stilt, black swan, grey teal, NZ shoveller, grey duck, arctic waders, eels and galaxiids.	B1
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl.	B2

Hoopers Inlet Swamp (Map F39)

Physical Description: Saltmarsh and swamp area behind Allans Beach on eastern side of Hooper's Inlet. A Department of Conservation Reserve.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type; sequence from saltmarsh community to fresh water swamps dominated by *Carex coriacea, C. virgata, C. gaudichaudiana* and *Isolepis nodosa.*	A5

Hukihuki Swamp (Map F60)

Physical Description: A coastal rush/sedge/podocarp swamp. Area 66 ha. Altitude 1m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
A diverse and interesting assemblage of wetland plant species, including *Leptocarpus similis* (jointed wire rush), *Carex* sp. and *Juncus* sp., flax and *Dacrydium cupressinum* (rimu).	B1

Kaikorai Lagoon (Map F38)

Physical Description: A brackish water lagoon and extensive adjacent marsh areas at the mouth of the Kaikorai Stream, southeast of Dunedin City. Area 100 ha approximately. Altitude 0-1m.

A range of marsh communities from brackish lagoon to saline lagoon. Vegetation includes jointed rush/saltmarsh ribbonwood rushland, herbfield communities in extensive marsh areas and a narrow strip of herbfield communities between the low bank and the lagoon in the Brighton Road area.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened Australasian bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus* and the banded dotterel *Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus.*	A1
The area is important as a refuge, feeding and breeding areas for a wide range of wetland birds. Birds that breed in the area include, mallard, shoveller duck, black swan, pukeko, pied stilts and black-backed gull. Shags, gulls, royal spoonbill, terns, white faced herons, oystercatchers and paradise duck also use the area. The marsh crake has also been observed here.	A2
Scarce wetland type; saltmarsh and *Leptocarpus* (rush) marsh.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Kemps Road Lagoon (Map F31)

Physical Description: A shallow lagoon immediately inland from the mouth of Kemps Road Creek. Area 10 ha. Altitude 15m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant waterfowl and wader habitat. Breeding and feeding area for a number of species including paradise, shoveller and grey ducks, grey teal, pied stilt, black swan and spur winged plover.	B2

Kirkwoods Creek Wetland Management Area (Map F4)

Physical Description: An area of valley floor boglands (tussock bogs and cushion bogs) within an altitudinal sequence of vegetation from the crest of the Hawkdun Range to the valley floor of Kirkwoods Creek, a tributary of the Manuherikia River. Altitude 740 - 1876 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland types; regionally threatened plant communities. The red tussock and cushion (sphagnum) bog communities are described by Grove (1992).	A5
The area supports a wide range of native species in a variety of habitats.	B1

Lake Hayes Margin (Map F6)

Physical Description: Southern and western margin of a shallow, lowland, glacial lake near Queenstown. Altitude 325m. Covered in part by a Recreation Reserve and Wildlife Management Reserve (53.68 ha), administered by the Department of Conservation. The lake and its shores have the status of Wildlife Refuge.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened native fish species the Koaro (*Galaxias brevipinnis*) and for threatened swamp birds Australasian bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus* and great crested grebe *Podiceps cristatus australis.*	A1
High species diversity. The lake supports a number of endemic bird species and is of special value as a breeding area for a variety of waterfowl, including paradise shelduck, grey duck, the New Zealand shoveller duck, the marsh crake and the Australian coot.	B1

Lake Tuakitoto Wetlands Complex (Map F51)

Physical Description: A large lowland lake and adjoining swamp, near the coast north of the Clutha River/Mata-Au Mouth. Fed from inflow of Lovell's Creek at northern end of wetland. Area approx 500 ha. Altitude 2m. Wetland owned as endowment land by the Otago Regional Council. Best remaining example of a previously widespread wetland type. Covered by a conservation notice.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Provides roosting, feeding and breeding habitat for the threatened Australasian bittern and banded dotterel. Also breeding area for the uncommon marsh and spotless crakes and South Island fernbird. Habitat for threatened giant kokopu, *Galaxias argenteus.* The threatened plant species *Urtica linearifolia* and *Isolepis basilaris* present on swamp margin.	A1
A diverse mosaic of vegetation types and wildlife habitats. Regionally and nationally important habitat for waterfowl, waders and swamp birds. Supports a significant proportion of the national population of mallard and NZ shoveller ducks, grey teal and black swan. All these species breed here. Considered nationally important as a fresh water fishery habitat, supporting long and short-finned eel, inanga and common bully populations as well as the giant kokopu (Davis 1987).	A3

Wetland Value	Value Type
Wetland highly valued by Kai Tahu for its historical associations, and as a traditional food gathering area.	A6
An exceptionally high diversity of bird life present, a reflection of the high habitat diversity (above). Some 50 species of bird recorded.	B1
Lake Tuakitoto and surrounding wetlands perform a valuable hydrological function. Serves as a flood ponding area and is an integral part of the Lower Clutha Flood Control and Drainage Scheme.	B3

Lamb Hill Wetlands (Map F35)

Physical Description: Areas of copper tussock wetland on gully floors in the southern part of Macraes Ecological District. Altitude 600 - 764m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The moist copper tussock wetland, although modified, contains a wide variety of wetland species. Copper tussock, toetoe, the sedge *Purei* and the exotic rush *Juncus effusus* make up the canopy and various mosses, liverworts, rushes and herbs make up the ground layer (see Bibby 1997, p121, for full description).	B1

Lenz Reserve Wetlands (Map F59)

Physical Description: Swamp/bog wetlands within the Lenz Private Scenic Reserve, 34km south of Owaka, in the Fleming River Valley. Area 100 ha. Altitude 20-36m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland types. An intact peat dome (sphagnum moss 2m above forest floor) surrounded by forest and a remnant kahikatea-rimu swamp forest.	A5

Lower Coutts Gully Swamp (Map F45)

Physical Description: Fresh-brackish water swamp near mouth of Duckbend Creek, southwest of mouth of Taieri River. A wildlife management reserve in part (Sawmill Wildlife Management Reserve) and part in private ownership. Area 40 ha. Altitude 1-10m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Australasian Bittern have been recorded at this site.	A1
An interesting and diverse variety of wetland plant species.	B1
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl. Pied stilt and spur winged plover breed in the area.	B2

Maclennan River Podocarp Swamp (Map F56)

Physical Description: Riparian kahikatea/silver beech forest and *Carex secta* swamp adjacent to Maclennan River. Includes the Maclennan River Scenic Reserve and part of the Tahakopa Bay Scenic Reserve.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High degree of naturalness.	A4
Wetland scarce in Region in terms of its ecological character. Rare example of riparian kahikatea/silver beech forest and the largest area of *Carex secta* swamp under reserve status in Otago. High regional scientific value.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Makarora Flat Wetland (Map F1)

Physical Description: *Carex/Juncus gregiflorus* wetland on left bank of Makarora River.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant waterfowl habitat. Important feeding and sheltering habitat for shoveller and grey ducks, grey teal and pukeko. Also used by waders (pied stilt, oystercatcher).	B2

Matukituki Valley Wetland Management Area (Map F3)

Physical Description: The area comprises three remnants of a large wetland system that once covered much of the Matukituki Valley: the West Wanaka Lagoons, the Narrow Spur Wetland and the Broad Spur-Tongue Spur Wetland. Swamps, bogs and open water together represent the largest complex of lowland wetlands in the Lakes Ecological Region. The three wetlands support similar floristic and faunistic values and retain much of their original character.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for the threatened Australasian bittern.	A1
Critical feeding and nesting area for a wide variety of waterfowl and waders including the NZ shoveller duck, crested grebe, pied stilt, black shag, and black swan.	A2
High diversity of habitat types.	A3
High degree of naturalness.	A4
Wetlands highly valued by Kai Tahu for presence of long-finned eels.	A6
High diversity of native birds, insects, aquatic and plant life.	B1

Maungatua Summit Wetland Management Area (Map F40)

Physical Description: Area containing cushion herb vegetation, *Sphagnum* bogs, flushes and small tarns on the summit and western slopes of Mt. Maungatua overlooking Taieri Plains, 24 km west of Dunedin. Altitude 800 - 890 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Although highly modified by fires, grazing and trampling, the Maungatua wetlands are the only remaining examples of high altitude wetlands on the eastern side of the Waipori Ecological District. Cushion-forming plants are confined to poorly drained areas on the summit ridge. Scattered tarns are surrounded by *Sphagnum* spp. and sedges.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Moa Creek Saline Area (Map F17)

Physical Description: A small saline site on upper reaches of a broad alluvial plain to the east of Raggedy Range, adjacent to Crawford Hills Road. Altitude 450 - 460m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Threatened plant species *Plantago spathulata* and *Selliera radicans* present.	A1

Moke Lake Bog (Map F7)

Physical Description: Bog with rushes, sedges, herbs and sphagnum mounds at southern end of montane lake, near Queenstown. Area 15 ha. Altitude 525m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Triglochin palustris.*	A1
Cultural sites of value to Kai Tahu are present.	A6

Murray's Road Saline Management Area (Map F25)

Physical Description: A salt pan on gently sloping surface of the Tor Plateau land system, the pan grading into a small wet area at one end. Area approx 2 ha. Altitude 190m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. This is the only known salt pan within the Macraes Ecological District. The salt pan is a mosaic of bare exposed saline soil and the native salt tolerant plants *Apium* sp. and *Selliera microphylla.* The wet area contains native sedges and rushes (see Bibby 1997, p117).	A5

Nenthorn Ridge Wetland Management Area (Map F27)

Physical Description: A wide variety of wetland types including a low turf ephemeral tarn, a medium turf ephemeral tarn, *Purei* wetlands, pools, bogs and moist red tussock grasslands in a relatively small area (112 ha) on the upper slope and ridge crests of the Rolling Hills land system. Altitude 540 - 570m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The threatened herb *Gratiola nana* is present in the low turf ephemeral tarn at Emerald Creek, one of only 23 known locations throughout the South Island (Johnson 1993). Two locally rare species *Elatine gratioloides* and *Glossostigma* sp. occur in the medium turf ephemeral tarns.	A1
A high diversity of wetland habitat types present.	A3
A very diverse range of wetland vegetation, a distinctive insect fauna and a diverse and relatively abundant waterfowl fauna (refer Bibby 1997, page 86-88 for details of species present, and Johnson 1993).	B1
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Nevis Plateau Wetland Management Area (Map F13)

Physical Description: The Nevis Plateau is dominated by the rectangularly-incised course of the Roaring Lion Creek. The Plateau contains areas of low relief with wetland depressions and extensive bogs. Altitude 1200m - 1840m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High degree of naturalness, particularly in higher altitude areas.	A4

Note: These values have been recognised by the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Okia Flat Wetland Management Area (Map F39)

Physical Description: Dune hollows (permanently or periodically wet), wetland turf, bogs and ponds within the Okia Reserve, Okia Flat, Otago Peninsula.

The best example of dune hollow vegetation in the Otago Coast Ecological Region.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Very diverse native wetland vegetation within the dune hollows (described by Johnson 1993). Some paddocks are of special interest in having sphagnum moss, the only sphagnum known on Otago Peninsula, and a species *Sphagnum novo-zelandicum)* which is generally uncommon in New Zealand. The bog sedges *Baumea rubiginosa* and *B. tenax* grow with the sphagnum.	B1
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Otanomomo Tuatiki Reserve (Map F52)

Physical Description: A small pond and swamp area (0.5 ha) within the Otanomomo Tuatiki Scientific Reserve (36.45 ha). The only reserved stand of alluvial plain podocarp forest in the Otago Land District.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High degree of naturalness. Native wetland vegetation in excellent condition. An important sequence from wetland vegetation through to native bush.	A4

Otokia Wetlands (Map F43)

Physical Description: Rush and sedge swamp adjacent to SH 1. Water levels fluctuate throughout the year. Adjacent land grazed. Area 10 ha.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant breeding area for waterfowl, including NZ shoveller duck, pukeko, pied stilt and spur winged plover.	B2
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Paddys Rock Ephemeral Tarn (Map F24)

Physical Description: A low turf ephemeral tarn on a broad ridge crest within the Rolling Hills land system. Altitude 600m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant *Tetrachondra hamiltonii* on margin of tarn.	A1
High plant diversity. The tarn contains the native herb *Hypsela rivalis,* the sedge *Carex gaudichaudiana* and the rush *Eleocharis acuta*.	B1

Papatowai Scenic Reserve Wetland (Map F56)

Physical Description: Estuarine swamp and saltmarsh above the coastal marine area on south side of Tahakopa River, adjacent to Papatowai township.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. A large area of *Leptocarpus similis* (rush) swamp and adjacent saltmarsh with interesting plant succession from saltmarsh to swamp to matai/rimu forest.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Patearoa Saline Area (Map F19)

Physical Description: A moderately large saline site near the Upper Taieri River consisting of small bare salty areas at the base of surrounding hillsides. On farm land adjacent to Styx-Patearoa Road. Altitude 395m. Protected by QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant (4.55 ha.). A Management Statement was prepared in 1995.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae zelandiae*	A1
High diversity of salt tolerant plants and moths (see Grove 1994, p59), its combined botanical and entomological values making it the most important example of such habitat in Central Otago and New Zealand.	B1

Pioneer Wetland Management Area (Map F41)

Physical Description: Red tussock wetland, swamps and ponds on the floodplain of the upper Pioneer Stream, south of the western arm of Lake Mahinerangi. Site of old gold mining and partly Historic Reserve administered by Department of Conservation. Altitude 450 - 500 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Recorded sitings of the threatened Australasian bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus* and the fernbird *Bowdleria punctata punctata.*	A1
Diverse plant communities. In swampy areas on valley floor *Carex gaudichaudiana* sedgeland occurs with exotic grasses, rushes and some large *Sphagnum* moss cushions and other cushion species.	B1

Puerua Wetland (Map F55)

Physical Description: A moderately large rush and sedge swamp area near the mouth of the Clutha River/Mata-Au. Administered by the Department of Conservation as the Puerua Wildlife Management Reserve. Area 200 ha. Altitude 5m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl (NZ shoveller duck and grey teal), wading birds (pied stilt, godwit, spur winged plover), and swamp birds (pukeko, bittern, marsh and spotless crake). South Island fernbird also present.	B2

Red Bank Wetland Management Area (Map F27)

Physical Description: Copper tussock wetland and a low turf ephemeral tarn on the western ridge crest in the upper catchment of a tributary of the North Branch of the Waikouaiti River. Altitude 470 -645m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
The threatened plant species *Isolepis basilaris* and *Myosurus minimus* subsp. *novae zelandiae* are present in the low turf ephemeral tarn.	A1
A high diversity of wetland species. A diverse and interesting aquatic insect fauna in seepages and creeks, including the brown caddis (*Psilochorema tautoru)*.	B1

Rockdale Saline Area (Map F14)

Physical Description: Small saline site adjacent to Chatto Creek-Omakau Road. Altitude 270m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Many uncommon salt tolerant plants and insects. (see Grove 1994, p65).	A5

Schoolhouse Flat Wetland Area (Map F8)

Physical Description: Bog and flush area on valley floor.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Diverse flora and invertebrate fauna - several alpine invertebrate species, possibly dependent on wetlands, eg. the moths *Asaphodes oraria* and *A. helias.*	B1

Shag River Estuary Swamp (Map F32)

Physical Description: An area of saline swamp above coastal marine area at mouth of Shag River.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Saltmarsh community with *Sarcocornia quinqueflora* (glasswort) jointed rush, and *Atriplex* spp.	A5
Wetland which is highly valued by Kai Tahu for mahika kai or other waahi taoka.	A6

Southern Garvie Mountains Wetland Management Area (Map F13)

Physical Description: A range of alpine wetland types, including peat bogs, pools, patterned mires and flushes on the Nevis Plateau. Part of the 'Nokomai wetlands' (the other part, to the south, being within the Nokomai Ecological District). Altitude 1300-1830m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
A high diversity of habitat types	A3
High degree of naturalness. These wetlands are the most extensive and spectacular in the Old Man Ecological District with dramatic contrasts between eastern glaciated and western non-glaciated (stringbog) systems.	A4
Scarce wetland type. Patterned mires are rare wetland types in the southern hemisphere (Mark *et al,* 1995).	A5
High species diversity.	B1

Note: These values have been recognised by the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

Sutton Salt Lake Wetland Management Area (Map F26)

Physical Description: Salt Lake (near Sutton, 2 ha) is a shallow saline lake on the southern edge of the Strath Taieri Plain. Swampy margins with succulent herb, rush and sedge vegetation. Part of Sutton Salt Lake Scenic Reserve (142 ha) which embraces other tarns, seepages, grassland and shrubland communities. Altitude 250m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Gratiola nana, Isolepis basilaris* and *Crassula peduncularis.*	A1
Scarce wetland type. Sutton Salt Lake is New Zealand's only inland salt lake. The Lake has an important sequence of salt tolerant vegetation around its margin. Native plants include *Lilaeopsis ruthiana, Apium* n.sp, and *Chenopodium ambiguum*. A range of water birds and waders use the lake, feeding on the tiny shrimp-like organisms which occur there.	A5

Swampy Summit Wetland Area (Map F36)

Physical Description: Swampy areas and peat bogs with associated moss field, sedgeland and shrub communities on the flat plateau of Swampy Summit in the Silver Peaks area, west of Dunedin. Area 40 ha. Altitude 739m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
A high diversity of habitat types. Swampy Summit peat bogs and associated plant communities provide important habitat for South Island fernbird and other species.	A3

Tahakopa Bay Podocarp Swamp (Map F56)

Physical Description: Swamp forests within Tahakopa Bay Scenic Reserve, inland of Tahakopa Bay, between the lower Maclennan River and the coast.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Areas of young podocarp swamp forest (with small areas of open water) and mixed podocarp - beech swamp forests, such as these, are now uncommon in the Otago Region.	A5

Tahakopa Peat Bog (Map F56)

Physical Description: A rush/sedge/flax/podocarp bog near mouth of Tahakopa River. Altitude 5m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Threatened Australasian bittern and fernbird recorded at this site.	A1
Active peat deposit (1.3 km^2) including peat dome.	A5
High wetland plant species diversity.	B1

Taieri River Mouth Wetland Management Area (Map F44)

Physical Description: An area of wetland including marsh, river terrace and gully floor plant communities on both sides of the Taieri River, about 3km from its mouth. Included in Taieri River Scenic Reserve, administered by the Department of Conservation. Area 10 ha. Altitude 10m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High diversity of habitat types. The variety of plant communities within such a small area is remarkable and some are considered quite unique, eg. the marsh areas which have some salt and some fresh water marsh characteristics, and the small kahikatea-totara-matai-miro stand on the west river terrace.	A3

Tautuku Wetland Complex (Map F59)

Physical Description: A large area of wetlands, including Lake Wilkie, on the coastal terrace behind Tautuku Beach and part of the lower Tautuku River Valley. Area approx 100 ha. Altitude 0-350m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
A diverse assemblage of habitat types and plant communities including rush swamps, swampy river flats (with sedge, jointed rush, shrubs) and swampy riverside podocarp/kamahi/mixed broadleaf forest.	A3
Scarce wetland type. Lake Wilkie possesses an important example of a hydrach succession from *Eleocharis* at the Lake margin to mature podocarp-rata-kamahi forest. Bog lakes are unusual on the east coast of the South Island.	A5

Tokomairiro River Swamp (Map F50)

Physical Description: Areas of rush/sedge/flax fresh water swamp adjacent to the Tokomairiro Estuary and the main river channel landward of the coastal marine area boundary. Area 100 ha. The area south of Toko Mouth Road (27.5 ha.) has been Protected by QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant since 1993. A Management Statement was prepared in 1994.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Scarce *Sarcocornia quinqueflora* saltmarsh community present.	A5
High species diversity. Habitat for waterfowl species including the mallard, grey and NZ shoveller duck, the grey teal and black swan. Links directly with the downstream estuarine area which provides habitat for the same species. Marsh crake and South Island fernbird also present.	B1

Tomahawk Lagoon (Map F37)

Physical Description: Two shallow brackish water lagoons joined by a narrow channel and sharing a common sea outlet located on the outskirts of Dunedin, at the southern end of the Otago Peninsula. Sea outlet often blocked. Much of the area is managed by the Department of Conservation as a Wildlife Management Reserve. Area 33 ha. The Native Bush remnants along one third of the eastern boundary of the Western Lagoon, and the northeastern edge of the Eastern Lagoon are protected by QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant since 1995. A management Plan has been drawn up.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Isolepis basilaris* on margin of lagoon.	A1
Regionally significant habitat for waterfowl and waders. Species present include shoveller duck, black swan, marsh crake, spotless crake, pukeko, pied stilt, variable oystercatcher and the spur-winged plover. Part of chain of feeding habitats along coast. Used by migrating waders. Habitat for native fish and eels.	B2

Totara Creek Saline Management Area (Map F19)

Physical Description: Scattered saline areas lying along an old river terrace on the true left of Totara Creek. Adjacent to the boundary between Awatea and Linnburn Stations on Awatea Station Road.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of the threatened plant *Triglochin palustre.*	A1
Scarce wetland type; high value.	A5
High plant diversity. A diverse assembly of salt tolerant plants including *Selliera microphylla, Sarcocornia quinqueflora, Samolus repens*, *Puccinellia* spp. and *Atriplex buchananii.*	B1

Trig Q Ephemeral Pool (Map F30)

Physical Description: Ephemeral Pool

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Crassula peduncularis*.	A1

Upper Taieri Wetlands Complex (Maps F18-F21)

Physical Description: The Upper Taieri Wetlands Complex consists of three sub-areas, the Styx (Paerau) Basin Wetlands, the Maniototo Basin Wetlands and Taieri Lake Wetlands. Altitude 300 - 550m. All three wetlands are on the floodplain of the Taieri River.

The areas marked on these maps, except F18 (Inset 1), are predominantly in private ownership and much of this area comprises pasture land used for grazing. However, most of these pasture areas retain significant wetland values, depending on the season.

The Styx Basin wetlands consist of a scroll-plain landform of meanders, oxbows, old braids, backwaters and cut-offs, stretching from near Paerau to Canadian Hut. The area includes the 136 ha Serpentine Wildlife Management Reserve.

The Maniototo Basin Wetlands, downstream of the Styx Wetlands, are of similar landform. They include the 37.5 ha Eden Creek Wildlife Management Reserve and the 44 ha Halls Road Wildlife Management Reserve.

The Taieri Lake Wetlands lie adjacent to the Taieri River, downstream of the Maniototo Wetlands. They encompass part of the 187 ha Taieri Lake Recreation Reserve.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for several threatened species, including the nationally threatened Australasian bittern and the banded dotterel (Grove 1994, p52), and the threatened plant *Deschampsia caespitosa*.	A1
The area provides critical habitat for the lifecycles of many indigenous bird species.	A2
Very high diversity of habitat types, reflected in the presence of 52 bird species, 27 of which are dependent on the wetland to meet their specialised needs. Many of the species breed in the wetland (see Grove 1994, p51-53, for details).	A3
Scarce wetland type. The only scroll-plain in New Zealand, with a consequently unique combination of wetland habitats. Although the vegetation and form of the Upper Taieri Wetlands has been extensively modified by drainage, channelisation, the introduction of exotic species, grazing and other farming activities, they are the best remaining example of this type of wetland in the Otago Region. They also represent the only significant inland upland habitat of this type left in New Zealand.	A5
Valued by Kai Tahu as traditional mahika kai area.	A6
A very high species diversity, of both flora and fauna.	B1
Regionally important habitat for waterfowl. Breeding area for a large number of waterfowl species.	B2
Performs an important hydrological function in terms of ameliorating downstream flood peaks and low flows.	B3

Von Valley Wetland Management Area (Map F11 and F12)

Physical Description: A large area of wetlands (including tarns, kettle holes, restiad bogs, cushion bogs, rush and sedge swamps, moist depressions and seepages) west of Lake Wanaka in the Von Valley. Altitude 100 - 760 m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened plant species *Cardamine* 'tarn', *Oreomyrrhis colensoi* var *delicatula*, *Crassula multicaulis, Isolepis basilaris, Deschampsia caespitosa, Ranunculus ternatifolius* and *Brachyscome linearis*.	A1
High diversity of habitat types (see physical description above).	A3
Some of the wetlands are scarce in Otago Region terms of physical/ecological character.	A5
High diversity of flora (The botany of the kettleholes and their margins is described by Johnson 1993).	B1

Waikouaiti Estuary Wetland (Map F34)

Physical Description: Remnant saltmarsh above coastal marine area near mouth of Waikouaiti River. Also known as Merton's Swamp.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Scarce wetland type. Saltmarsh community with *Sarcocornia quinqueflora* (glasswort) and jointed rush.	A5

Waipori Boot Wetland (Map F42)

Physical Description: An old oxbow of the Taieri River. A wildlife management reserve under the administration of the Department of Conservation. Area 64 ha.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for threatened Australasian bittern, and the marsh crake.	A1
A high diversity of waterfowl species present. (Values are generally similar to those outlined for the Waipori/Waihola Wetlands Complex, below).	B1

Waipori/Waihola Wetlands Complex (Map F42)

Physical Description: The wetlands complex consists of two large shallow lakes, Waipori [220 ha] and Waihola [640 ha] and an extensive system of lagoons, ponds, vegetated islands, channels and swamps, situated on the lower Taieri Plain, 30km south-west of Dunedin. The Complex includes the 315 ha. Sinclair Wetlands which has been subject to a QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant since 1986. A Management Plan has been in place since that time. Inflows are from the Waipori River, the Meggatburn, Boundary Creek and several man made drains. The wetlands drain into the Waipori River, then into the Taieri River. Area >2000 ha. Altitude 10m.

A total of 105 ha of the Complex is administered by the Department of Conservation as Wildlife Management Reserve (eg. McClaren's, Gillander's reserves) and marginal strip. See Department of Conservation (1996) for details of management and ownership. In 1995 the Clutha District Council accepted the requirement of the Minister of Conservation for a designation (as a Wildlife Management Area) over most of the wetland. The designation has now lapsed. In November 1996, the Department of Conservation released a Management Statement for the wetland.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Habitat for the threatened Australasian bittern *Botaurus poiciloptilus,* and threatened indigenous fish species the giant kokopu *(Galaxias argenteus)* and the banded kokopu *(Galaxias fasciatus).* Presence of the threatened plant species *Urtica linearifolia* and *Deschampsia caespitosa.*	A1
A very high diversity of habitat types (see physical description above). Internationally significant as water bird habitat (Department of Conservation 1993) and nationally important fish habitat (Davis 1987). The best remaining example of a lowland wetland remaining in Otago and one of the largest and most significant remaining in New Zealand.	A3
A high degree of naturalness, notwithstanding drainage activities, and the introduction of exotic species etc. A considerable proportion of the wetland is relatively undisturbed and the plant communities are largely native. A wide variety of native wetland species are present, specifically the native shrubland vegetation, jointed rush communities and back-swamp sedgeland present on the islands of the Waihola River delta. The presence of a sequence of different vegetation types adds to the botanical value (Cromarty & Scott 1995).	A4
Wetlands of this type and size are scarce in the Region and in New Zealand; this has implications for the conservation of species such as the Australasian bittern and the marsh and spotless crakes, which require large contiguous blocks of swampland in order to maintain viable populations.	A5
The wetlands are of historical and cultural importance to Kai Tahu. A site of mahika kai where eels are traditionally gathered. The wetlands are also highly valued as a source of flax.	A6
A very high diversity of flora and fauna, reflecting the diversity of habitats (above). Fifty five species of birds and 12 species of native fish recorded. Provides habitat for several regionally and locally rare plant and animal species, including the endemic fernbird *(Bowdleria punctata punctata).*	B1
Regionally important habitat for waterfowl, with counts of up to 10,000 ducks and swans. A major breeding and moulting site for black swan, paradise shelduck, mallard duck, grey duck, grey teal, NZ shoveller and NZ scaup.	B2
Performs a valuable hydrological function. Lakes Waipori and Waihola and associated swamps function as a flood ponding area for the lower Taieri Plain. Also play a significant role in maintaining adjacent watertables and downstream flows in summer via the gradual release of ponded water.	B3

Waitepeka Swamp (Map F53)

Physical Description: Three discrete areas of rush, sedge and flax swamp, beside the Puerua deviation channel, near the mouth of the Clutha River/Mata-Au. Part of the area to the west of the road (11 ha.) is protected by a QEII National Trust Open Space Covenant. Part of it is managed as a Wildlife Management Reserve by the Department of Conservation. Altitude 12m.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Presence of threatened Australasian bittern.	A1
Regionally significant waterfowl habitat. Wading birds and swamp birds. South Island fernbird marsh crake and pukeko present.	B2

Welcome Creek (Map F30A)

Physical Description: Welcome Creek is a spring-fed stream with a small catchment dominated by pastoral land use, predominantly dairy farming. The stream has a variable riparian buffer dominated by pasture grass species and crack willow. The spring drains water from the lower Waitaki alluvium aquifer to the Waitaki River. The upstream (source spring), flow has been measured at 56 – 59 l/s. The lower site (near Waitaki River) flow ranges from 1121 – 1381 l/s. It is important to note that a major bywash point for the Lower Waitaki Irrigation Scheme contributes flow to Welcome Creek between the upper and lower sites at all times of year, this bywash may range in flow from 250 l/s in the non irrigation season to over 500 l/s during irrigation months. It is estimated that Welcome Creek flow at Ferry Road (between the upper and lower sites) has a base spring flow of about 450 l/s.

Groundwater seepage is predominantly from the lower Waitaki alluvium (irrigation scheme sourced groundwater). However, at lower reaches of Welcome Creek (at the lower site and below), it is possible for Waitaki River sourced groundwater to be providing some flow to the stream. There have been no observed Waitaki River channels providing direct flow to the stream. However, NZMS 260 Series Maps and aerials indicate some historic channels connecting to the lower reaches of the creek from the Waitaki River.

Welcome Creek has a diverse and healthy freshwater invertebrate community. It is a noted spawning site for Salmo trutta (brown trout) and Oncorhynchus mykiss (rainbow trout). It has a wide ranging native fishery, including species such as, Gobiomorphus hubbsi (bluegill bully), Gobiomorphus breviceps (upland bully), Gobiomorphus cotidianus (common bully), Galaxias maculates (inanga), Anguilla dieffenbachii (longfin eel) and Anguilla australis (shortfin eel). Also Neochanna burrowsius (Canterbury mudfish) have also been located in wetland systems associated with the lower reaches of Welcome Creek, so far this is the only report of mudfish in the Otago province. This makes Welcome Creek one of the more diverse and regionally important streams with regard to fish species diversity present in Otago.

Wetland Value	Value Type
Spring fed wetland maintaining local water table in gravels.	A1, A2, B3

Woodbine Wetland Area (Map F5)

Physical Description: Delta swamps and backwaters near mouth of Dart River/Te Awa Whakatipu.

Wetland Value	Value Type
High diversity of fauna. A wide variety of waterfowl and swamp birds present including paradise shelduck, and grey duck, black swan, grey teal, pukeko.	B1

Bibliography of references to Schedule 9

Bibby, C.J. (1997) Macraes Ecological District: Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme. Department of Conservation, Dunedin.

Cameron, E.K., P.J. de Lange, D.R. Given, P.N. Johnson, C.C. Ogle (1995) Threatened and Local Plant Lists (1995 Revision) NZ Botanical Society Newsletter 39: 15-28.

Cromarty, P., D.A. Scott (eds) 1995 A directory of Wetlands in New Zealand. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

Davis (1987) Wetlands of National Importance to Fisheries. NZ Freshwater Fisheries Report No 90. Freshwater Fisheries Centre, MAFFish, Christchurch.

Department of Conservation (1993) Lakes Waipori and Waihola Wetland: A Natural Resources Inventory. Department of Conservation, Otago Conservancy, Dunedin.

Department of Conservation (1996) Lakes Waipori and Waihola Wetland: Management Statement. Miscellaneous Report Series No 29. Otago Conservancy, Dunedin.

Grove, P. (1992) Hawkdun Ecological District. Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme. Unpublished MSc Thesis, University of Otago, Dunedin.

Grove, P. (1994) Maniototo Ecological District. Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme. (NZ Protected Natural Area Programme 30) Department of Conservation, Dunedin.

Johnson, P.N. (1991) Lake Waihola: report on botany of western swamp. DSIR Land Resources Contract Report no 91/104. 7 pp.

Johnson, P.N. (1993) Oreti - Von Kettleholes: Botanical Report. Conservancy Advisory Science Notes No 16, Department of Conservation, Wellington, 15pp.

Mark, A.F., P.N. Johnson, K.J.M. Dickinson, M.S. McGlone (1995) Southern Hemisphere Patterned Mires, with emphasis on Southern New Zealand. Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand, Volume 25, No 1: 23-54.

Patrick, B.H. (1989) The Lepidoptera of Otago Salt Pans. Department of Conservation Scientific Series, No 3. Dunedin.

10 Schedule of additional wetlands

This schedule contains wetlands which have not been assessed for Type A or Type B values. Drainage or diversion of water from these wetlands is not permitted without a resource consent. Before a resource consent will be granted, it will be necessary to ascertain whether a wetland in this schedule is found to support any Type A or Type B value.

This schedule is adopted to give effect to Policy 10.4.7 and relates to Rules 12.1.2.6 and 12.3.2.2.

It should be noted that the rules in Chapter 13 also apply where a wetland in this schedule is located within the bed of a lake or river.

Site Number	*Wetland name*	*NZMS 260 series map sheet*	*Map reference(s)*	*See Plan map:*
1.	Alexandra Swamp	G42	288 484	G4
2.	Anderson's Pond Margins	I44	975 930	G7
3.	Ashtonvale Dam Wetland Areas	H44	827 984	G7
4.	Bailey's Hill Swamp	F42	890 366	G3
5.	Ben Nevis Swamp	F42	952 495	G3
6.	Black Rock Swamp Complex	I43	002 181 015 193	G7
7.	Black Stream Tributary Swamps	G44	488 904 486 907	G6
8.	Blair Swamp	G47	218 089	G8
9.	Braeside Wetland	H44	864 710	G7
10.	Bushbury Swamp Complex	G45	395 578	G6
11.	Cairn Road Swamp	G46	200 270	G8
12.	Camp Stream Swamp	H46	678 354	G8
13.	Campbell's Reserve Pond Margins	G40	135 051	G2
14.	Cannibal Bay Road Wetland	H46	597 110	G8
15.	Carson's Creek Swamp	G44	374 773	G6
16.	Charteris Bush Road Swamp	F44	096 847	G6
17.	Clark's Junction Swamp	H44	826 938	G7
18.	Clearview Swamp	G45	343 455	G8
19.	Clover Downs Wetland	I43	253 056	G7
20.	Confluence Swamp	F41	771 689	G3
21.	Cross Eden Burn Swamps	H41	767 614 771 620 780 625	G4
22.	Culcairn Oxbow	H46	595 332	G8
23.	Damper Pond Margins	F40	982 082	G1

Site Number	*Wetland name*	*NZMS 260 series map sheet*	*Map reference(s)*	*See Plan map:*
24.	Diggers Creek Swamp	G47	288 052	G8
25.	East Boundary Creek Swamp	G43	428 062	G6
26.	Eldorada Dam Margins	H44	683 856	G7
27.	Ellison Wetland	I43	265 064	G7
28.	Fernhill Swamp	H43	863 102	G7
29.	Finegand Lagoon	H46	586 317	G8
30.	Fortification Stream Headwaters Swamp	H44	865 940	G7
31.	Gate Creek Swamp	H40	677 902	G2
32.	Gilmour Road wetland	G43	224 170	G6
33.	Glendhu Swamp	H44	514 794	G6
34.	Green Swamp	H42	684 330	G4
35.	Hawk's Burn Swamp	F42	093 493	G4
36.	Hawkdun Runs Road Swamp Complex	H40	632 954 645 951 640 953	G2
37.	Hazeldale Road Swamp	G46	278 292	G8
38.	Henley Swamp	H45	881 652 to 896 663	G7
39.	Hummock Runs Road Swamp	I43	983 158	G7
40.	Hut Creek Swamp Complex	H40	672 918	G2
41.	Jennings Creek Swamp	I44	296 911	G7
42.	Johnson's Lagoon Margins	H46	717 326	G8
43.	Kaitangata Reservoir	H46	677 321	G8
44.	Kakaho Creek Swamp	J42	398 432	G5
45.	Laws Road Swamp	H41	695 616	G4
46.	Linnburn Runs Road Wetland	H43	627 265	G4
47.	Little Stoney Bog	E41	476 819	G1
48.	Loch Loudon Swamp Complex	H44	732 753	G7
49.	Loch Luella Swamp Complex	H44	710 765 717 765	G7
50.	Lo-debar Swamp	H45	741 612	G7
51.	Lower Manorburn Dam Margins	G42	310 458	G4
52.	Lower Waipati River Swamp	G47	247 952 256 945	G8
53.	MacFarlane Road Oxbow Pond Margins	G45	329 537	G6, G8
54.	Malone's Dam Margins	H44	555 744	G6
55.	Marana Swamp	G45	375 564	G6
56.	Mayds Island Pond Margins	G44	353 906	G6

Site Number	*Wetland name*	*NZMS 260 series map sheet*	*Map reference(s)*	*See Plan map:*
57.	Mayo Island Wetland Complex	G44	355 907	G6
58.	McGregor Swamp	I43	278 083	G7
59.	Mifton Hill Swamp	G45	144 689	G6
60.	Minaret Bay Swamp	F39	003 364	G1
61.	Moffats Stream Swamp	G44	458 928	G6
62.	Moke Creek Swamp	E41	612 709	G3
63.	Office Creek Swamp	H44	807 768	G7
64.	Old Dunstan Road Swamp	H43	699 036	G7
65.	Old Dunstan Road Wetlands Complex	H42	505 430 506 439 512 430 499 424	G4
66.	Oldham Ponds Margins	F41	754 745	G3
67.	Peat Moss Hills	I43	060 108 060 101 060 093	G7
68.	Phoenix Dam Margins	H44	545 754	G6
69.	Pleasant River Estuary Swamp	J43	308 146	G7
70.	Pomahaka Oxbow Wetlands	G45	179 599 182 622	G6
71.	Pomahaka River Gully Wetlands	F44	093 834	G6
72.	Poverty Hill Swamp	H46	704 387	G8
73.	Rastus Burn Flats	F41	808 696	G3
74.	Reefs Pond Margins	I43	957 023	G7
75.	Rigney Pond Margins	G44	354 928	G6
76.	Scaife's Lagoon	F40	960 085	G1
77.	Shag Point Dam Margins	J43	381 246	G7
78.	Shagree Creek Swamp	H46	770 349	G8
79.	Signal Hill Swamp	E42	540 545	G3
80.	Silver Peak Swamp	G46	185 360	G8
81.	South Boundary Road Swamp	H45	766 628	G7
82.	Stewarts Swamp	G47	372 019	G8
83.	Stirling Swamp Complex	H46	635 360	G8
84.	Stoneygrove Wetland	I45	915 527	G8
85.	Tahakopa River Swamp	G47	336 033	G8
86.	Takitoa Swamp	I45	915 625	G7
87.	Te Matai Swamp Complex	I44	317 837	G7
88.	The Gorge Swamp	E41	684 678	G3
89.	The Rivers Pond Margins	I43	233 088	G7

Site Number	*Wetland name*	*NZMS 260 series map sheet*	*Map reference(s)*	*See Plan map:*
90.	Three O'clock Stream Swamp	I43	090 075	G7
91.	Three Stones Swamp	G46	320 373	G8
92.	Timber Creek Tarn	I41	004 803	G5
93.	Tokorangi Swamp	G45	178 668	G6
94.	Trig E Swamp	H45	740 623	G7
95.	Trig F Swamp	I43	085 199	G7
96.	Upper Tahakopa Swamp	G46	205 175	G8
97.	Upper Waiareka Stream Swamp	J41	359 788	G5
98.	Upper Waianakarua Estuary	J42	416 485	G5
99.	Upper Waipahi River Swamp	G46	168 373	G8
100.	Upper Waipati River Swamp	G47	243 968	G8
101.	Valley Creek Tributary Swamp	G44	124 942	G6
102.	West Boundary Creek Swamp	G43	420 070	G6
103.	Wetland adjacent to the Stony Creek Dams	H42	668 410	G4
104.	Wyndham Station Road Swamp	G46	194 304	G8

11 Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order

The following is the full text of the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

1. Title and Commencement -

(1) This Order may be cited as the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997.

(2) This Order shall come into force on the 28th day after the date of its notification in the *Gazette*.

2. Interpretation -

In this order, unless the context otherwise requires, -

"Act" means the Resource Management Act 1991:

"Preserved waters" means the waters set out in Schedule 1 of this order:

"Protected waters" means the waters set out in Schedule 2 of this order.

3. Preservation in natural state

(1) It is declared that the waters described in Schedule 1 contain one or more of the following outstanding amenity and intrinsic values which are afforded by waters in their natural state:

(a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to -

(i) People's appreciation of pleasantness of waters:

(ii) Aesthetic coherence:

(iii) Cultural and recreational attributes:

(b) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems:

(c) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning, and resilience.

(2) Because of the outstanding amenity and intrinsic values recognised in subclause (1), these outstanding values shall be sustained.

(3) Because of the outstanding amenity and intrinsic values recognised in subclause (1), it is hereby further declared that the water bodies set out in Schedule 1 are outstanding in their natural state.

(4) Because the water bodies set out in Schedule 1 are recognised to be outstanding in their natural state, they must be preserved as far as possible in their natural state.

(5) Except as provided in clauses 5 and 6 of this order, the exercise of a regional council of its functions and powers under Section 30(1)(e) and (f) of the Act (as they relate to water) are restricted or prohibited so as to retain the preserved waters as far as possible in their natural state.

4. Protection of characteristics

(1) It is declared that the waters set out in Schedule 2 which are no longer in their natural state contain one or more amenity and intrinsic values which warrant protection because they are considered outstanding.

(2) Because of the outstanding amenity and intrinsic values recognised in subclause (1), these outstanding values shall be sustained.

(3) Because of the outstanding amenity and intrinsic values recognised in subclause (1), it is declared that the water bodies described in Schedule 2 contain one or more of the following outstanding characteristics, as set out in Schedule 2 –
(a) As a habitat for terrestrial and aquatic organisms:
(b) As a fishery:
(c) For its wild, scenic and other natural characteristics:
(d) For scientific values:
(e) For recreational, or historical purposes:
(f) For significance in accordance with tikanga Maori.

(4) Because of the outstanding characteristics specified in subclause (3), the characteristics of the waters, as set out in Schedule 2, are protected.

(5) Except as provided in this order the exercise by a regional council of its functions and powers under Section 30(1)(c) and (f) of the Act (as they relate to water) are restricted or prohibited as set out in Schedule 2.

5. Exemptions –

The restrictions and prohibitions in clauses 3(5) and 4(5) and Schedule 2 do not limit the regional council's functions or powers to grant a resource consent or to make a rule for any part of the preserved waters or protected waters for all or any of the following purposes –
(a) Maintenance or protection of any network utility operation (as defined in Section 166 of the Act) or any public or private road or any bridge:
(b) Maintenance of soil conservation and river protection works:
(c) Research into, protection of, enhancement of, or restoration of, values and characteristics for which the water bodies are being preserved or protected, as the case may be:
(d) On the same or similar conditions for any lawful use of water being undertaken immediately before the date on which this order came into force.

6. Further exemptions –

(1) This clause applies to:
(a) the Dart River mainstem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with the Beans Burn; and
(b) the Rees River mainstem from Lake Wakatipu to its confluence with Hunter Stream.

(2) The restrictions and prohibitions in clause 4(5) and Schedule 2 do not limit the regional council's functions and powers to grant a resource consent or to make a rule for the waters referred to in subclause (1) for all or any of the following purposes:
(a) the construction, maintenance and protection of roads and bridges:

(b) any exercise of the powers of a Catchment Board under the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941:
(c) any exercise of the powers of a River Board or local authority under the River Boards Act 1908:

(3) any exercise of the powers of a Land Drainage Board or local authority under the Land Drainage Act 1908.
(4) The purposes in subclause (2) include –
(a) The undertaking of work necessary to prevent or control soil erosion and flooding affecting properties adjacent to the above water bodies including work in the river bed such as (but not by way of limitation) the diversion of water and damming of water to construct river training works, groynes and other flood protection works:
(b) The maintenance of existing flood protection and erosion control works both in and adjacent to the above water bodies:
(c) Action taken in accordance with section 330 of the Resource Management Act 1991 to carry out any of the works referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b).

7. Provisions for the Nevis River –

The regional council may grant a resource consent or make a rule in a plan for hydro electric development in respect of the Nevis River if that resource consent or rule complies with the restrictions and prohibitions set out in Schedule 2.

8. Existing permits may be replaced –

The restrictions and prohibitions in clauses 3(5) and 4(5) and Schedule 2 do not limit the regional council's functions in respect of any part of the preserved or protected waters to replace any existing resource consent or grant any resource consent in substitution for an expiring resource consent if the new resource consent is granted on substantially the same terms and conditions as the existing or expiring resource consent.

9. Lake Dunstan not affected –

Nothing in this order affects the levels of Lake Dunstan or the operation of the Clyde power station.

10. Scope –

Nothing in this order limits the effect of sections 14(3)(b) and 14(3)(e) of the Act relating to use of water for an individual's reasonable domestic needs, the reasonable needs of an individual's animals for drinking water, and for fire-fighting purposes.

Schedule 1

Waters to be preserved

All map references NZMS 260

Waters	Outstanding amenity and intrinsic values
Dart River mainstem above the Beans Burn confluence to source (E40:375077 to E39:590261).	a, b, c, e, f
All tributaries of the Dart River within the boundaries of the Mount Aspiring National Park, excluding Route Burn, but including the sections of the Rock Burn and Beans Burn within the boundary of the Mount Aspiring National Park.	a, b, c, e, f
Parts of tributaries of the Dart River not within the Mount Aspiring National Park Rock Burn (E40:386048 to E40:383047); Beans Burn (E40:375077 to E40:370084).	a, b, c ,e, f
Route Burn from confluence with Dart River to source, and all its tributaries, including Left Branch and North Branch (E40:394982 to D40:284012 and D40:292060).	a, b, c, d, e, f
Rees River mainstem above Hunter Stream confluence to source (E40:499117 to E40:579149).	a, b
All tributaries of the Rees River within the boundaries of the Mount Aspiring National Park.	a, b
Greenstone River mainstem from Lake Wakatipu to source, including Lake McKellar and its tributaries (E41:441758 to D41:275860 and D41:249861).	a, d, f
Caples River mainstem from Greenstone River confluence to source (E41:412757 to D41:289890 and D41:296 837).	a, d, f
Lochnagar and Lake Creek (at or about E40:615143; and E40:649110 to E40:627143).	f
Nevis wetland (all water bodies upstream of F43:885 243 on a tributary of Roaring Lion Creek).	f

Key:

Amenity values:

(a) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to people's appreciation of pleasantness of waters:

(b) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to aesthetic coherence:

(c) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to cultural attributes:

(d) Natural and physical qualities and characteristics that contribute to recreational attributes.

Intrinsic values:

(e) Biological and genetic diversity of ecosystems:

(f) Essential characteristics that determine the ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning and resilience.

Schedule 2

Waters to be Protected

All map references NZMS 260

Waters	Outstanding Characteristics	Restrictions and Prohibitions
Kawarau River mainstem from Scrubby Stream to Lake Wakatipu control gates (F41:035680 to F41:738667).	(c) wild and scenic characteristics (e) natural characteristics, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover River is in high flood; (d) scientific values, in particular the return flow in the upper section when the Shotover River is in high flood; (e) recreational purposes, in particular rafting, jetboating and kayaking.	(i) no damming allowed; (ii) water quality to be managed to Class CR standard.
Nevis River mainstem gorge from Nevis Crossing to Kawarau River confluence (F41:978644 to F42:952516).	(c) wild characteristics (e) recreational purposes, in particular fishing and kayaking.	(i) no damming allowed unless a rule in a plan or condition in any water permit granted makes provision for river flows to be provided at sufficient levels to enable kayaking to be undertaken in the gorge at times stated in the plan or permit, and the extent of any impounded water is not beyond F42:943468; (ii) fish passage to be maintained; (iii) water quality to be managed to Class CR, Class F and Class FS standards.
Nevis River mainstem above Nevis Crossing to source (F42:952516 to F43:799217).	(c) scenic characteristics (e) recreational purposes, in particular fishing.	(i) no damming allowed unless a rule in a plan or condition in any water permit granted makes provision for river flows to be provided at sufficient levels to enable kayaking to be undertaken in the gorge at times stated in the plan or permit, and the extent of any impounded water is not beyond F42:943468; (ii) fish passage to be maintained; (iii) water quality to be managed to Class F and Class FS standards.

Shotover River mainstem (at or about F41:765680 to E40:662173).	(c) wild and scenic characteristics; (c) natural characteristics, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (d) scientific value, in particular the high natural sediment load and active delta at confluence with Kawarau River; (e) recreational purposes, in particular rafting, kayaking and jetboating; (f) historical purposes, in particular goldmining.	(i) no damming allowed; (ii) water quality to be managed to Class CR standard.
Dart River mainstem from Lake Wakatipu to confluence with Beans Burn (at or about E41:438 853 to E40:375 077).	(a) habitat for wildlife; (c) scenic characteristics; (c) natural characteristics, in particular natural turbidity; (d) scientific value, in particular natural turbidity; (g) significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river.	(i) no damming allowed; (ii) braiding of water to be maintained.
Rees River mainstem from lake Wakatipu to confluence with Hunter (at or about E41:448 852 to E40:499 117).	(a) habitat for wildlife; (c) scenic characteristics; (g) significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the mouth of the river.	(i) no damming allowed; (ii) braiding of water to be maintained.
Diamond Lake, Diamond Creek and Reid Lake (at or about E40:435 975; E40:444 963 to E40:450 918).	(a) habitat for wildlife and quinnat salmon; (b) fishery.	(i) no damming allowed; (ii) fish passage to be maintained (iii) water quality to be managed to Class F and Class FS standards.
Lake Wakatipu (from outlet at control gates (F41:738 667) to confluences of Dart River (at or about E41:438 853) and Rees River (at or about E41:448 852) and including whole lake).	(b) fishery; (c) scenic characteristics; (d) scientific value, in particular water clarity, and bryophyte community; (e) recreational purposes, in particular boating; (g) significance in accordance with tikanga Maori, in particular sites at the head of the lake, and the legend of the lake itself.	(i) fish passage to be maintained; (ii) water quality to be managed to Class AE, Class CR, Class F and Class FS standards.
Lochy River mainstem (F42:720 488 to E42:480 390 and E42:462 364).	(b) fishery; (e) recreational purposes, in particular fishing.	(i) fish passage to be maintained; (ii) water quality to be managed to Class F and Class FS standards.
Von River mainstem (E42:500592 to E42:444363 and E42:375581).	(b) fishery (e) recreational purposes, in particular fishing.	(i) fish passage to be maintained; (ii) water quality to be managed to Class F and Class FS standards.

Key:

Outstanding characteristics (Section 199(2)(b) and (c) of the Act):

(a) as habitat for terrestrial or aquatic organisms;

~~(b) as a fishery;~~
~~(c) for its wild, scenic or other natural characteristics;~~
~~(d) for scientific and ecological values~~
~~(e) for recreational purposes;~~
~~(f) for historical purposes;~~
~~(g) for significance in accordance with tikanga Maori.~~

~~Restrictions and Prohibitions:~~
~~References to Classes are Water Quality Classes as in the Third Schedule of the Act.~~

Decision: E1e

12 Schedule of coastal marine area boundaries

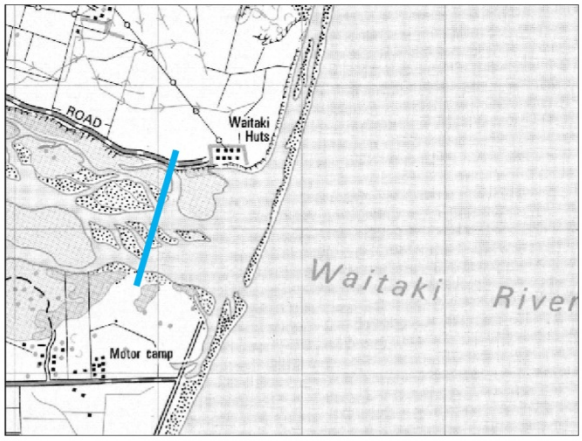
This schedule, and the accompanying maps, identify the boundary of the coastal marine area at Otago's river mouths. Water on the landward side of the identified boundary is subject to the provisions of this Plan, while water on the coastal side is subject to the provisions of the Regional Plan: Coast.

Waitaki District

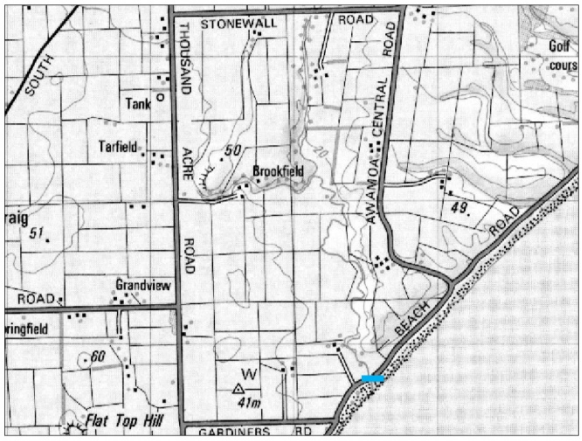
Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
1. Waitaki River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J41 (Edition 1 1984):636837, 636835	J41 (Edition 1 1984):630844, 628837
2. Awamoa Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Beach Road bridge.	J41 (Edition 1 1984):47608, 476608	J41 (Edition 1 1984):475608, 476608
3. Kakanui River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Kakanui Point Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):449559, 448555	J42 (Edition 1 1984):443564, 445564
4. Orore Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Waianakarua Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):437531, 437530	J42 (Edition 1 1984):436531, 437530
5. Bow Alley Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Waianakarua Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):424503, 425504	J42 (Edition 1 1984):423505, 423506
6. Waianakarua River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):421482, 421484	J42 (Edition 1 1984):419483, 419484
7. Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):395403, 396404	J42 (Edition 1 1984):393404, 394405
8. Kuriiti Creek a.k.a. Little Kuri Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):394401, 394399	J42 (Edition 1 1984):393399, 393400
9. Waiwhero-whero Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the footbridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397375, 398375	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397374, 398374
10. "Kemp Road" Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the lower limit of the lagoon.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):421330, 420330	J42 (Edition 1 1984):419322, 421323
11. Trotters Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):412325, 414327	J42 (Edition 1 1984):412325, 413326
12. Back Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):404315, 405316	J42 (Edition 1 1984):404315, 405316
13. Tarapuke Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397305, 398306	J42 (Edition 1 1984):397305, 398306
14a. Shag River - northern arm	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):377240, 377239	J43 (Edition 1 1980):376238, 377237
14b. Shag River - southern arm	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	J43 (Edition 1 1980):377231, 377230	J43 (Edition 1 1980):374 230, 375 229
15. Stony Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the	J43 (Edition 1	J43 (Edition 1

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
	estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	1980):358200, 359201	1980):357201, 357200

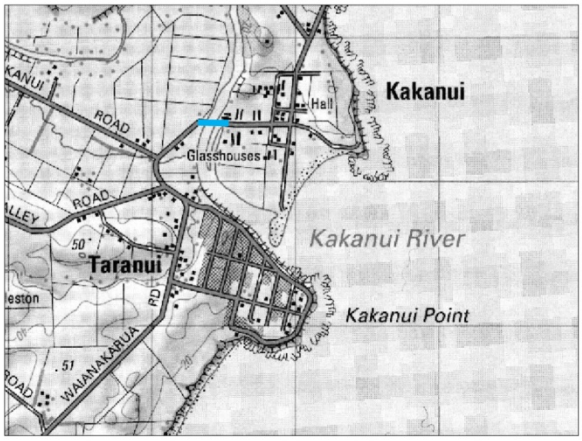
* Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.



1 Waitaki River

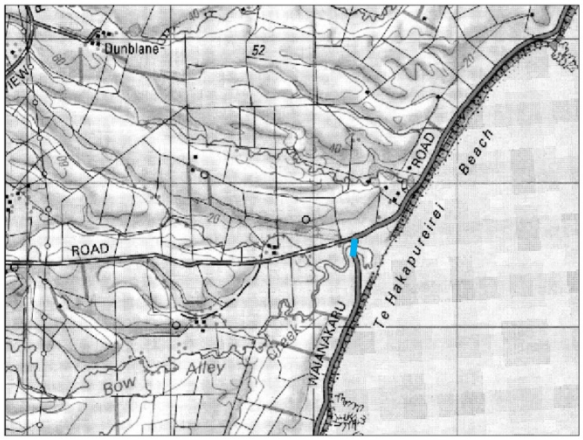


2 Awamoa Creek

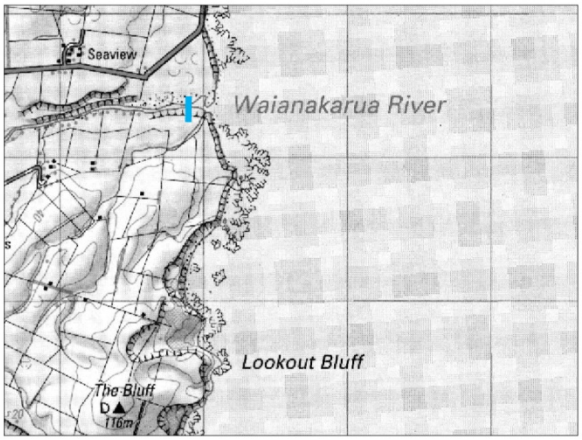


3 Kakanui River

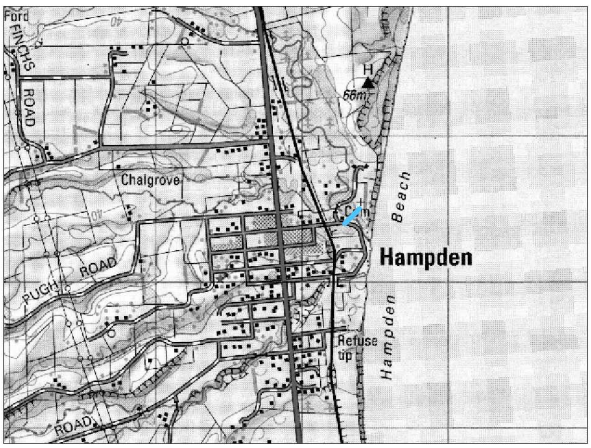
4 Orore Creek



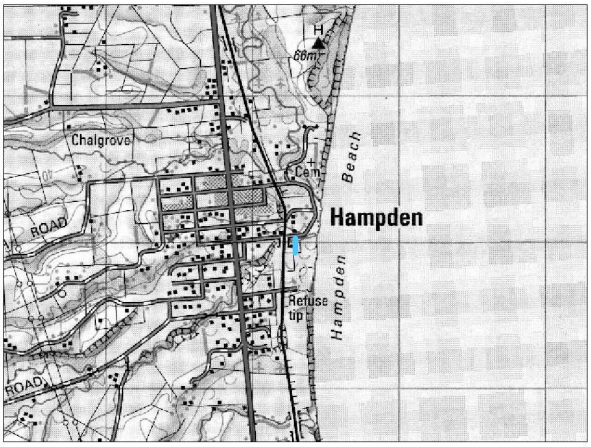
5 Bow Alley Creek



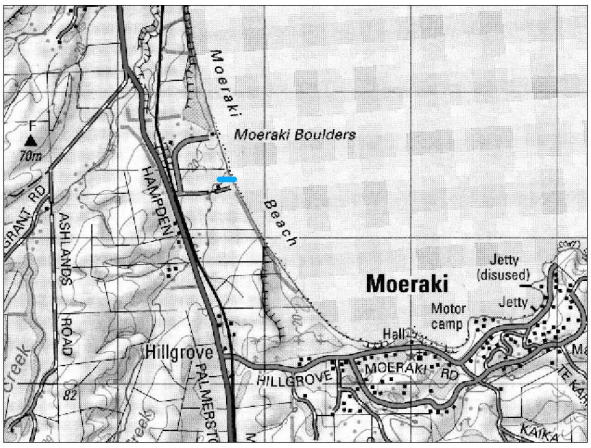
6 Waianakarua River



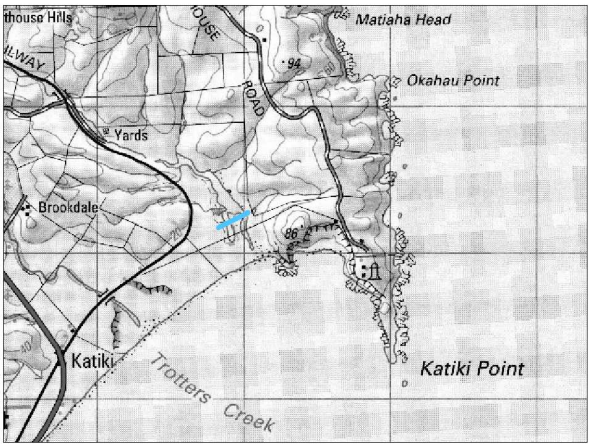
7 Kurinui Creek a.k.a. Big Kuri Creek



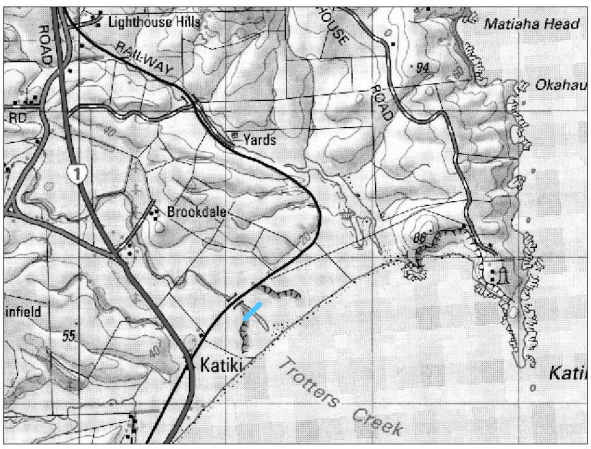
8 Kuriiti Creek a.k.a. Little Kuri Creek



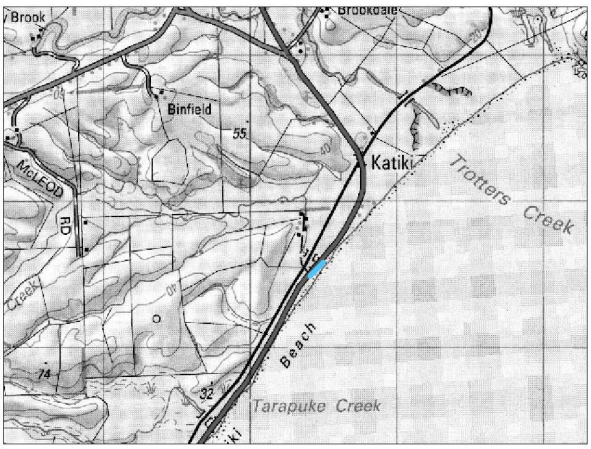
9 Waiwherowhero Creek



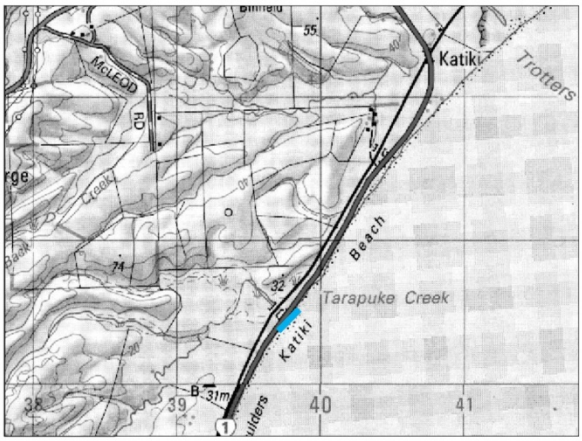
10 "Kemp Road" Creek



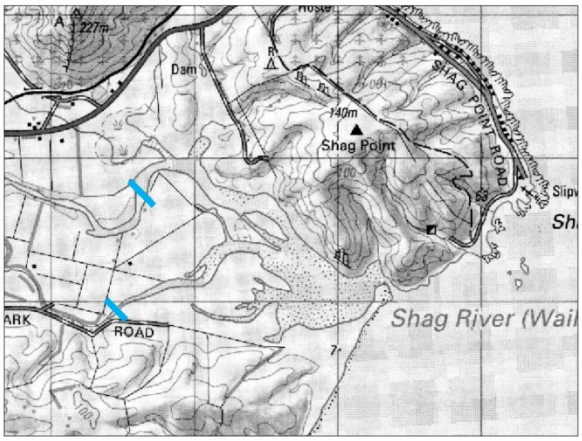
11 Trotters Creek



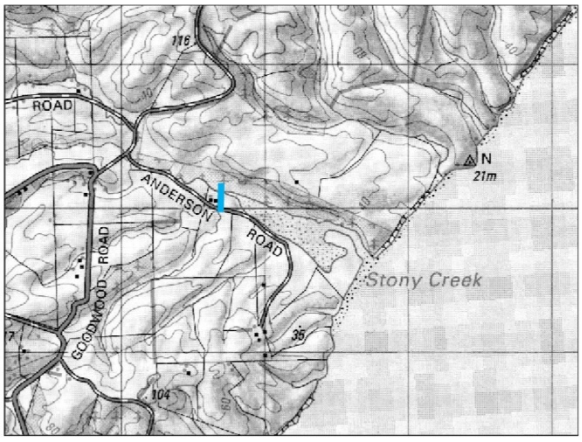
12 Back Creek



13 Tarapuke Creek



14 Shag River



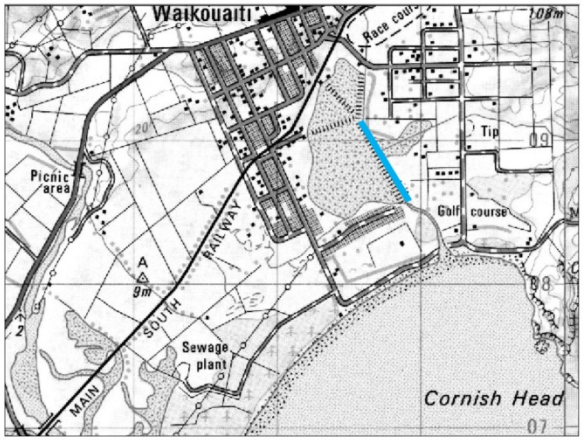
15 Stony Creek

Dunedin City

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
16. Pleasant River	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" adjacent to the south end of the railway bridge.	J43 (Edition 1 1980)315156, 315157	J43 (Edition 1 1980):311155, 312155
17. Hawksbury Inlet	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" running along the causeway edge to include the Eastern arm in the coastal marine area.	I43 (Edition 1 1981):437531, 437530	I43 (Edition 1 1981):286091, 289086
18. Waikouaiti River	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 1 Road bridge.	I43 (Edition 1 1981):265085, 267085	I43 (Edition 1 1981):266087, 266089
19. Careys Creek	The "mouth" where it enters Blueskin Bay, the "boundary" adjacent to the northern end of the railway bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):208954, 209954	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):208956, 209956
20. Waitati River	The "mouth" where it enters Orokonui Inlet, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):216926, 21 925	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):214924, 215923
21. Drivers Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the metalled road bridge parallel to Long Beach.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):269923, 270922	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):268921, 269920
22. Water of Leith	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the railway bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):178787, 179788	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):176789, 178789
23. 'Marne Street' Creek	The "mouth" where it enters Anderson's Bay Inlet, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Marne Street Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):179766, 180765	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):179766, 180765
24. Tomahawk Lagoon	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Tomahawk Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):189750, 191750	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):189751, 190751
25. Kaikorai Stream	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream. The boundary around the estuary is mean high water spring.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):082733, 082735	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):084736, 083737
26. Taylors Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Brighton Road bridge.	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):041708, 043709	I44/J44 (Edition 2 1987):039708, 040709
27. Otokia Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Brighton Road bridge.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):031701, 031699	I45 (Edition 1 1980):030699, 030700
28. Tutu Stream	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 47.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):981652, 982654	I45 (Edition 1 1980):980652, 981654
29. Reids Stream	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 48.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):966633, 967634	I45 (Edition 1 1980):966633, 967634
30. Unnamed	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the road bridge DCC 49.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):954612, 955614	I45 (Edition 1 1980):954612, 955614

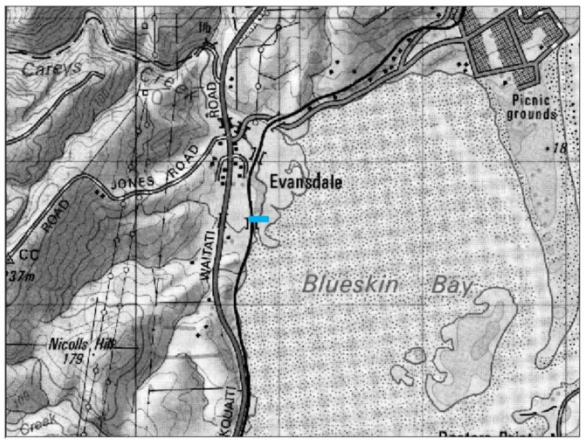
***** Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.

16 Pleasant River

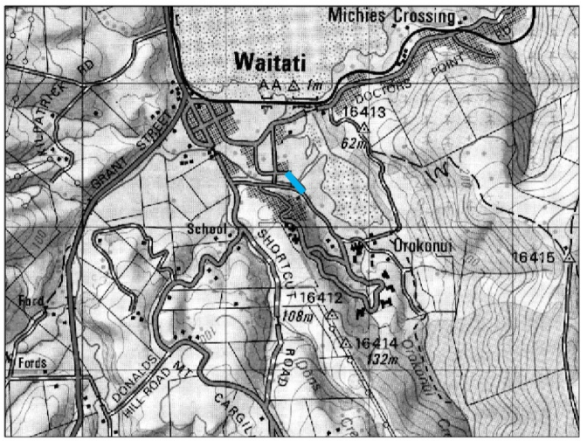


17 Hawksbury Inlet

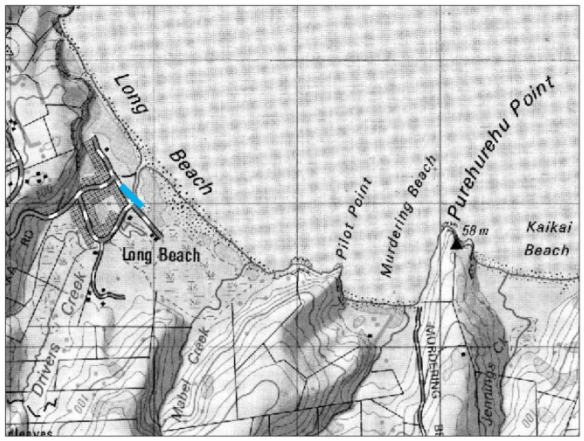
18 Waikouaiti River



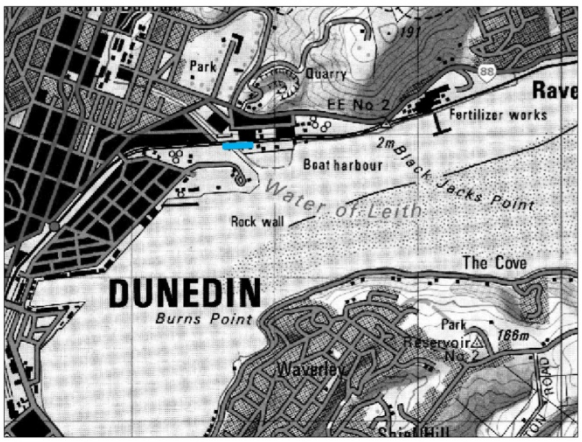
19 Careys Creek



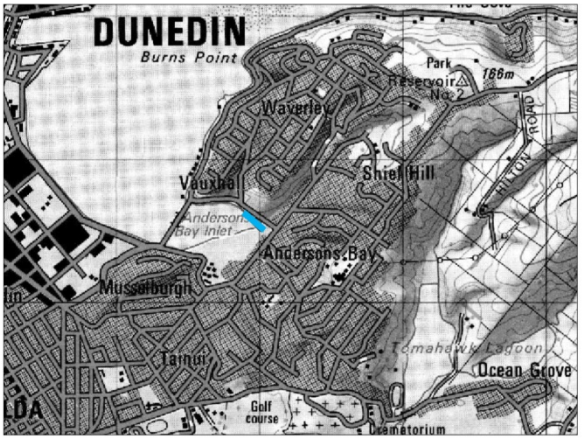
20 Waitati River



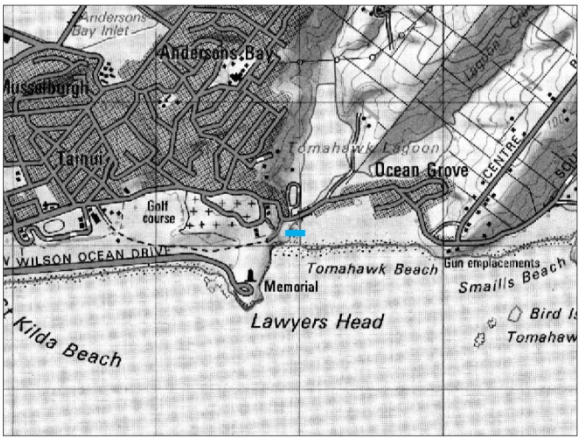
21 Drivers Creek



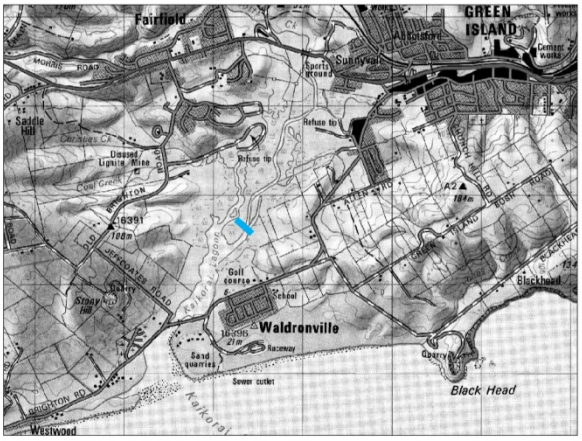
22 Water of Leith



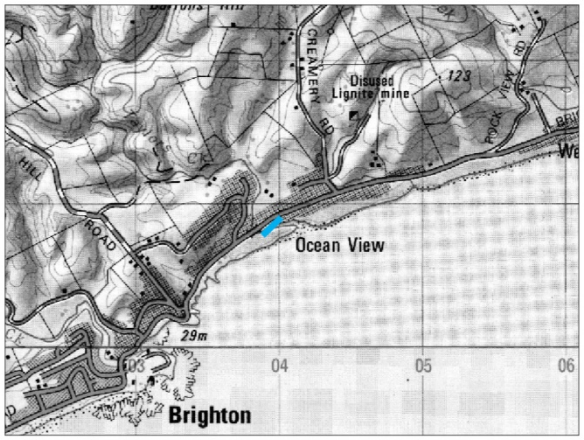
23 "Marne Street" Creek



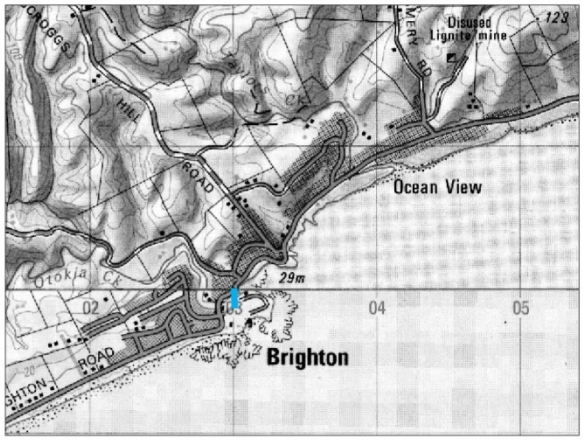
24 Tomahawk Lagoon



25 Kaikorai Stream

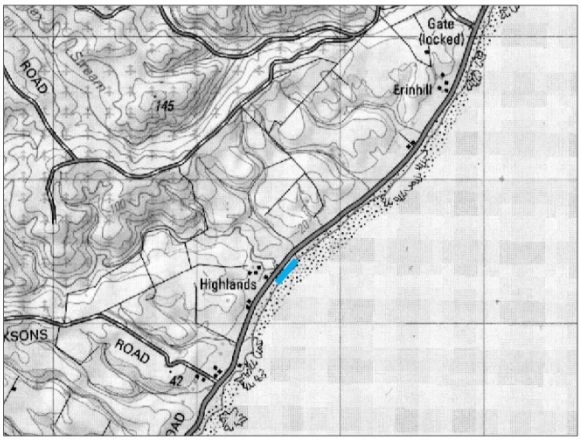


26 Taylors Creek

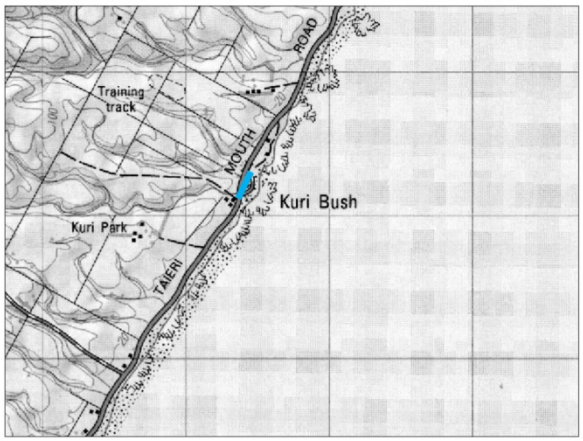


27 Otokia Creek

28 Tutu Stream



29 Reids Strem



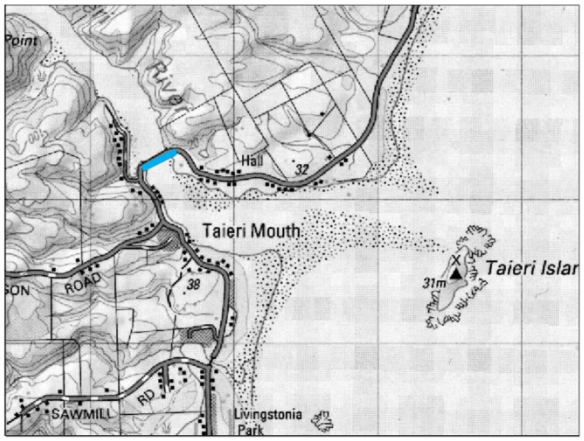
30 Unnamed

Clutha District

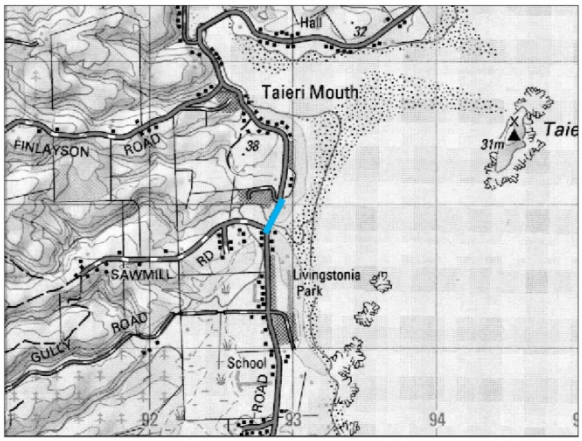
Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
31. Taieri River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the road bridge at Taieri Mouth.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):930575, 936582	I45 (Edition 1 1980):923581, 925582
32. Duckbend Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the road Sawmill Road bridge.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):930570, 930568	I45 (Edition 1 1980):926567, 927569
33. Akatore Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	I45 (Edition 1 1980):905516, 906515	I45 (Edition 1 1980):904516, 905515
34. Bull Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the picnic area.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 884440	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 883441
35. Tokomairiro River	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 884440	H45 (Edition 1 1981):882439, 883441
36. Wangaloa Creek	The "mouth" at the first constriction, the "boundary" at the second constriction.	H45 (Edition 1 1981):785357, 786356	H45 (Edition 1 1981):782353, 781354
37. Washpool Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Wangaloa Mouth Road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):752324, 754325	H46 (Edition 1 1981):751326, 752326
38. Clutha River/Mata-Au - Matau Branch	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):665262, 668263	H46 (Edition 1 1981):660264, 660267
39. Clutha River/Mata-Au - Koau Branch	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" along the causeway and five times the width of the mouth upstream.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):639239, 641241	H46 (Edition 1 1981):639247, 642249, 640242, 639245
40. Karoro Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Kaka Point road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):623184, 624183	H46 (Edition 1 1981):621185, 623184
41. Nugget Stream	The "mouth" where it enters the sea, the "boundary" at the Nuggets Road bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):635162, 636164	H46 (Edition 1 1981):634162, 635164
42. Owaka River	The "mouth" where it enters the Catlins River, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Pounawea bridge.	H46 (Edition 1 1981):552110, 554110	H46 (Edition 1 1981):551113, 553113
43. Catlins River	The "mouth" where it enters the Catlins 'Lake', the "boundary" at the downstream side of the Ratanui bridge.	G46 (Edition 1 1981):500495, 501493	G46 (Edition 1 1981):491082, 490083
44. Maclennan River	The "mouth" where it enters the Maclennan River, the "boundary" at the downstream side of the State Highway 92 Road bridge between Centre Road and Puaho Road.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):392011, 391013	G47 (Edition 1 1983):393013, 392015
45. Tahakopa River	The "mouth" where the Maclennan River enters, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):390014, 390011	G47 (Edition 1 1983):385014, 385015
46. Fleming River	The "mouth" where it enters the Tautuku River, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346961, 347962	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346962, 347963
47. Tautuku River	The "mouth" where the Fleming River enters, the "boundary" at the constriction	G47 (Edition 1 1983):346962,	G47 (Edition 1 1983):345960,

Water body	Description of mouth and boundary *	Mouth grid reference	Boundary grid reference
	upstream.	347961	346961
48. Hukihuki Creek	The "mouth" where it enters the Waipati estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):291927, 292926	G47 (Edition 1 1983):293928, 294927
49. Waipati River	The "mouth" where it enters Waipati estuary, the "boundary" five times the width of the mouth upstream.	G47 (Edition 1 1983):284925, 294924	G47 (Edition 1 1983):281924, 291924

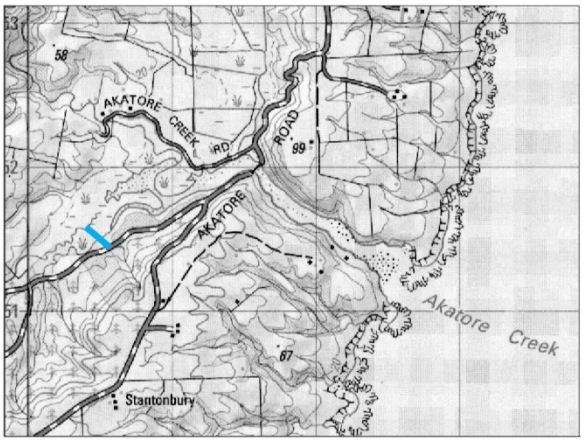
* Taken from the NZMS 260 series of 1:50,000 scale maps.



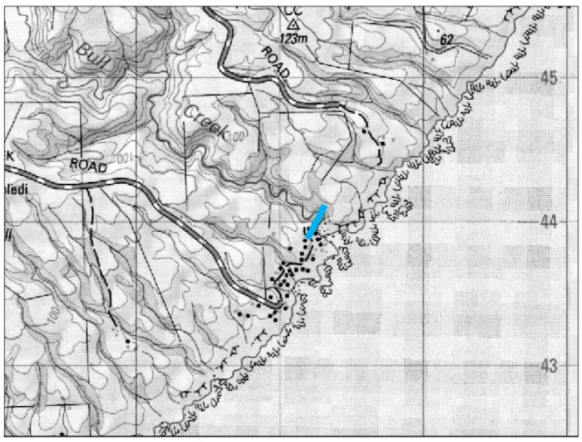
31 Taieri River



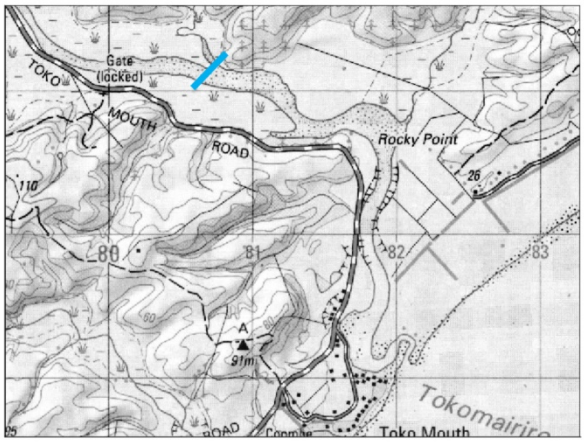
32 "Sawmill Road" Creek



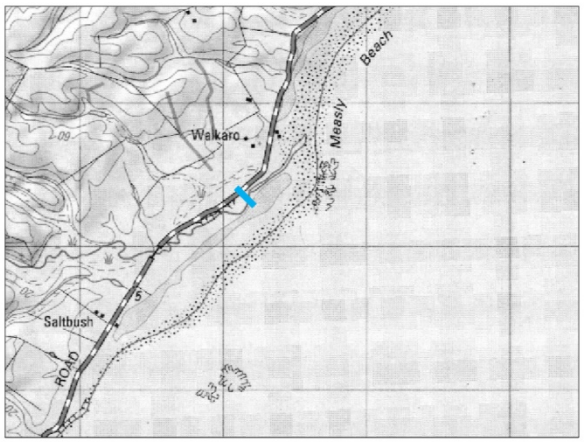
33 Akatore Creek



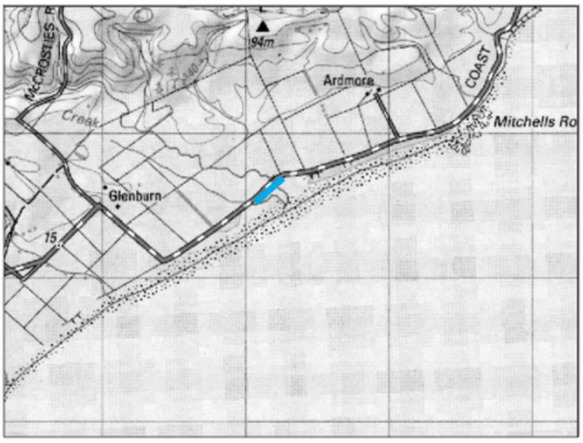
34 Bull Creek



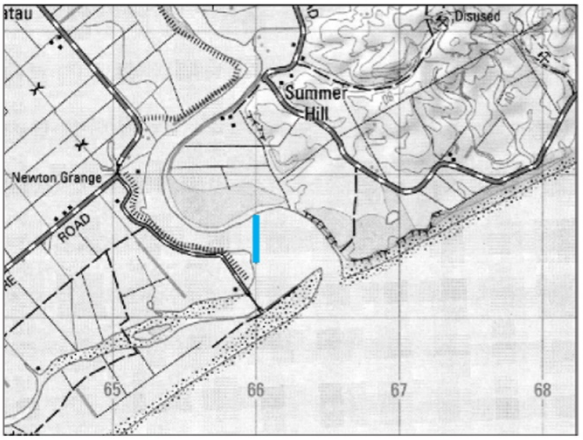
35 Tokomairiro Stream



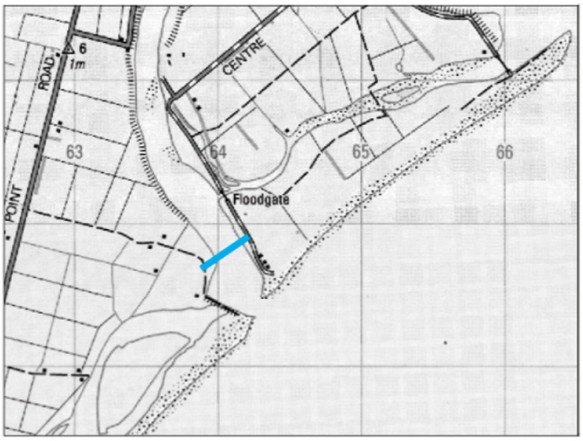
36 Wangaloa Creek



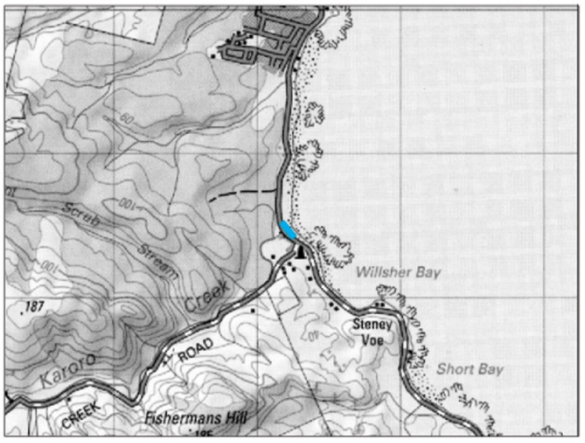
37 Washpool Creek



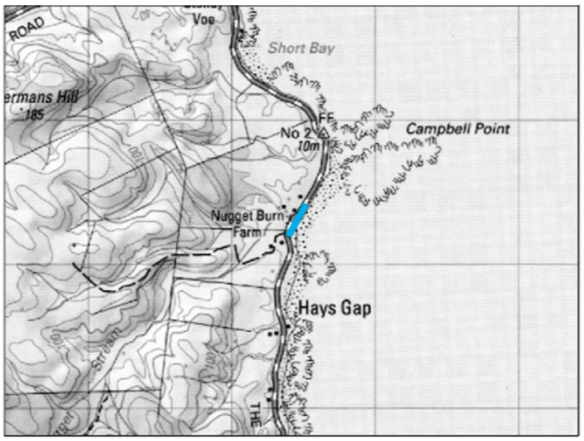
38 Clutha River/Mata-Au – Matau Branch



39 Clutha River/Mata-Au – Koau Branch

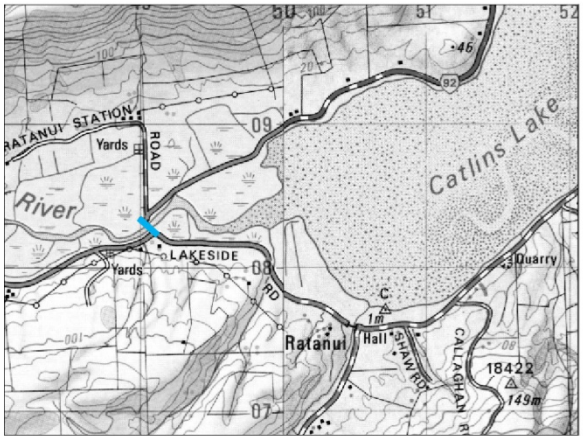


40 Karoro Creek

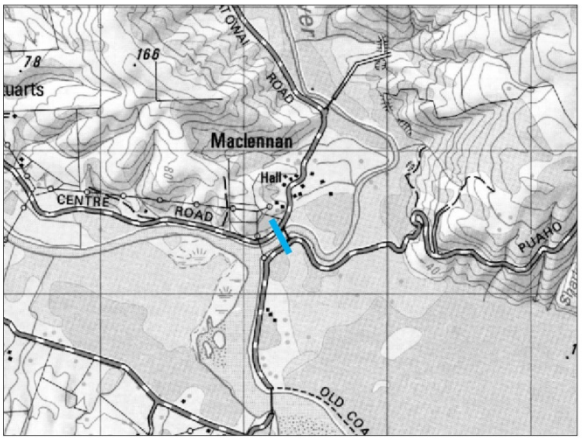


41 Nugget Stream

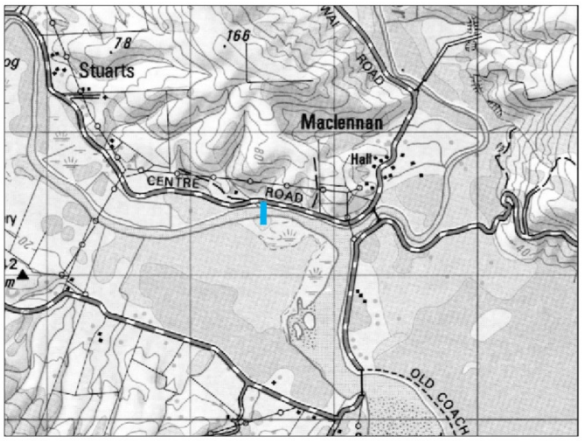
42 Owaka River



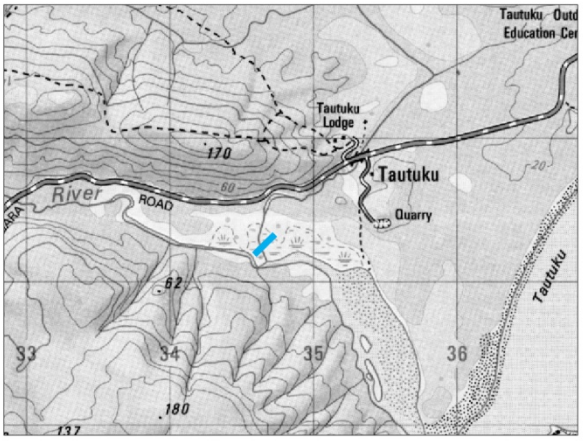
43 Catlins River



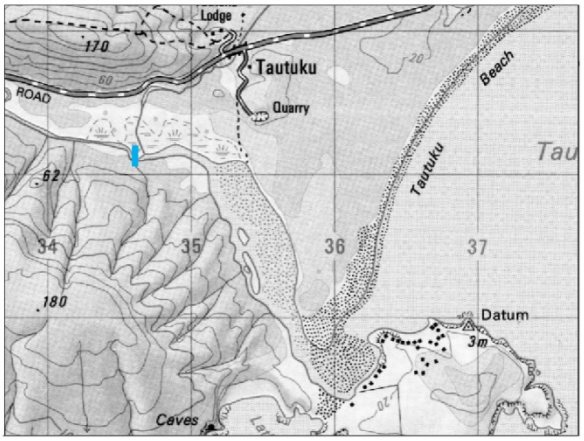
44 Maclennan River



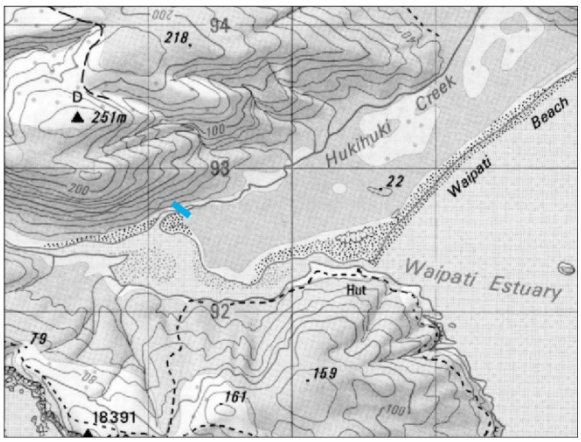
45 Tahakopa River



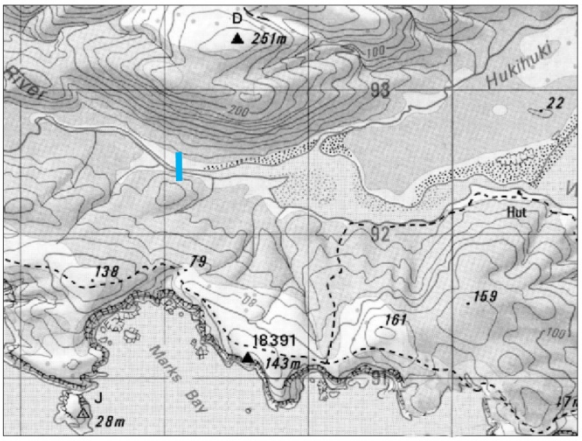
46 Fleming River



47 Tautuku River



48 Hukihuki Creek



49 Waipati River

13 Schedule of transitional provisions repealed by this Regional Plan: Water

The Otago Regional Council had an existing Regional Plan for Otago (commonly referred to as the Transitional Regional Plan), constituted by Section 368 of the Resource Management Act 1991. The Transitional Regional Plan was made up of notices, authorisations, bylaws, determinations, and resolutions in operation at the time of the enactment of the Resource Management Act (1 October 1991). These instruments were deemed to form rules in the Transitional Regional Plan, some of which related to the management of Otago's water bodies.

This Plan deletes the provisions of the Transitional Regional Plan relating to water management within Otago, as identified in this schedule.

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 3 "Regionally Significant Features"	Schedule 1A; Schedule 9.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 4 "Minimum Lake Level"	Policy 6.5.1; Rules 12.1.1.1 and 12.3.1.4.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(1) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	Policy 5.4.2.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(2) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 5.(3) "Water Rights and General Authorisations"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Lake Tuakitoto) Notice 1991: 6 "Limit of Notice"	Rule 12.1.2.1; covered by Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 3 "Regionally Significant Features"	Schedule 1A.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 4 "Right to dam not to be granted"	Rule 12.3.1.3; Schedule 6.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(1)"	Policy 5.4.2.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(2)"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 5 "Water Rights (General):-(3)"	No equivalent provision.
Local Water Conservation (Pomahaka River and tributaries, and Lower Clutha River) Notice 1989: 6 "Limit of Notice"	Rule 12.1.2.1; covered by Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Record of Determination of Appeal: Kakanui River minimum flow 4 September 1991	Schedule 2; Policies 6.4.2 and 6.4.3; Rule 12.1.4.3.
Otago Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, General Authorisations 1988:	
General Authorisation 1: "Minor Agricultural Uses"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 2: "Irrigation Scheme Distribution"	Rules 12.1.4.1, 12.2.2.2, 12.11.2.1 and 12.11.2.3.

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
General Authorisation 3: "School Supply"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 4: "Spray Mixing"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 5: "Earthworks"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5 and 12.2.2.2.
General Authorisation 6: "Septic Tank Effluent"	Rules 12.6.1.3 and 12.6.1.4.
General Authorisation 7: "Tracer Dye Discharge"	Rule 12.11.3.1.
General Authorisation 8: "Swimming Pool Discharge"	Rule 12.11.2.1.
General Authorisation 9: "Prospecting and Casual Mining"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5, 12.2.2.2, and 12.11.2.3.
General Authorisation 10: "Stormwater/ Drainage Discharges"	Rules 12.1.2.6, 12.3.2.2, 12.4.1.1, 12.4.1.2 and 12.5.1.1.
General Authorisation 11: "Herbicides"	Rules 12.7.1.1 to 12.7.1.4.
General Authorisation 12: "Drilling"	Rules 12.1.2.2 to 12.1.2.5, 12.2.2.2, 12.2.2.3 and 12.9.1.1.
General Authorisation 13: "Minor Dams"	Rule 12.3.2.1.
General Authorisation 14: "Farm Wastes Disposal"	Rules 12.8.1.2 to 12.8.1.4.
General Authorisation 15: "Incidental Damming and Diversion"	Rules 12.3.2.1 and 12.3.2.3.
General Authorisation 16: "Land Stability Drainage"	Rules 12.1.2.6, 12.3.2.2, 12.5.1.1 and 12.11.2.3.
Otago Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, Bylaw 1988:	
Clause 1, "General", except as it relates to Section 3	No equivalent provision
Clause 2.1, "Maintenance of watercourses and defences against water"	No equivalent provision
Clause 2.2, "Crossings"	Rules under 13.1 to 13.3, 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.3, "Alteration to Watercourse"	Rules under 13.4 and 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.4, "Construction of a defence against water"	Rules under 13.2 and 13.3 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.3 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river).
Clause 2.5, "Removal of shingle, sand, or other material"	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.6, "Vegetation"	Rules under 13.6 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.1	Rules under 12.3; and 13.1 to 13.6, (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.

Repealed provision of Transitional Regional Plan	Regional Plan: Water provision replacing
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.2	Rules under 13.2 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river); Rules under 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.3	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.7, "Obstructions and impairment of efficiency": 2.7.4	Rules under 13.5 (as it applies to the bed of a lake or river), otherwise no equivalent provision; Rules under 14.3 and 14.4 (as it applies to land outside of the bed of a lake or river, but within seven metres of the margin of any lake, or of the top of the bank of any river), otherwise no equivalent provision.
Clause 2.8, "Access, damage etc."	No equivalent provision.
Clause 4, "Dams": 4.1, "Construction and alteration"	Rules under 12.3, 13.2 and 13.3.
Clause 4, "Dams": 4.2, "Maintenance and removal"	Rules under 13.3 and 13.4.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.1 to 5.7	Rules under 12.2 and 14.1.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.8, "Control of pile driving, dredging etc"	As it applies to the bed of a lake or river, Rules under 13.5. Rules under 14.2.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.9, "Pollution of underground water": 5.9.1	Rules under 12.4 to 12.13.
Clause 5, "Underground water": 5.9, "Pollution of underground water": 5.9.2	Rules under 14.1 and 14.2.
First Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Second Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Fifth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Sixth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Eighth Schedule	No equivalent provision.
Waitaki Catchment Board and Regional Water Board, Bylaw Confirming Resolution, Hilderthorpe Floodway Bylaw 1988	
Clauses 1 to 10	No equivalent provision
Taieri River Trust Bylaw No.1 1960	
Clauses 1 to 30	No equivalent provision

14 The Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973

The Lake Wanaka Preservation Act, incorporating all amendments as at 28 February 1998, is reproduced below. The prohibition on the damming of Lake Wanaka and the Upper Clutha River/Mata-Au contained in this Act is reflected in Rule 12.3.1.2 of this Plan. Preserving, as far as possible, the shoreline of Lake Wanaka in its natural state, as contained in this Act, is provided for in Rules 13.5.2.1 and 13.5.3.1 of this Plan.

THE LAKE WANAKA PRESERVATION ACT 1973

An Act to make provision for the preservation of the normal water levels and shoreline of Lake Wanaka, and the maintenance and improvement of its water quality.

1. Short Title

This Act may be cited as the Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973.

This Act is administered in the Department of Conservation; see s.6 of the Conservation Act 1987.

2. Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, –

"Emergency" means an emergency declared by the Guardians of Lake Wanaka under this Act:

"Lake" means Lake Wanaka:

"Natural state", in relation to the water levels of the lake, means the levels the water in the lake attains naturally from time to time without control or obstruction by or through the agency of any person; and, in relation to the shoreline of the lake, means the natural contours of the shoreline formed from time to time by the water levels of the lake, or formed from time to time by natural changes to the shore of the lake:

"Works" means any dam, weir, gate, lock, boom, excavation, structure, or other works.

3. Act to bind the Crown

This Act shall bind the Crown.

4. Purposes of Act

The purposes of this Act are –

(a) To prevent the water in the body of the lake from being impounded or controlled by, or, as far as possible, obstructed by, any works except in an emergency:

(b) To prevent the natural rate of flow of lake water between the outlet of the lake which forms the source of the Clutha River and the confluence of that river and the Cardrona River from being varied or controlled by any works except in an emergency:

(c) To preserve, as far as possible, the water levels of the lake and its shoreline in their natural state:

(d) To maintain and, as far as possible, to improve the quality of water in the lake.

5. Guardians of Lake Wanaka

(1) The Minister of Conservation may, on such terms and conditions as the Minister may from time to time specify, appoint such persons as the Minister thinks fit to be the Guardians of Lake Wanaka.

(2) The functions of the Guardians of Lake Wanaka shall be –

(a) Generally, to report and make recommendations to the Minister of Conservation on any matter affecting the purposes of this Act, on the use of the lake for recreational purposes, and on any other matter concerning the lake which the Minister of Conservation may from time to time specify; and

(b) In particular –

(i) To declare as an emergency any state of affairs existing when the lake water appears likely to attain such a level as to cause loss or damage to human life, livestock, or property by flooding:

(ii) To consult the Otago Regional Water Board from time to time on those functions of the Board which may affect the lake, and to advise the Minister of Conservation of any such consultation and its outcome:

(iii) To give advice to the Minister of Conservation on any matter referred to the Minister under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act.

6. Lake levels not to be controlled

(1) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Public Works Act 1981, the Resource Management Act 1991, the Electricity Act 1968, or any other Act, or section 7 of this Act, –

(a) No person shall, except for the duration of an emergency, impound or control the water in the body of the lake by any works:

(b) No person shall, except for the duration of an emergency, build, construct, erect, or excavate any works which could measurably increase or decrease the natural rate of flow of lake water between the outlet of the lake which forms the source of the Clutha River and the confluence of that river and the Cardrona River.

(2) Where, under subsection (1) of this section, any works are built, constructed, erected, or excavated for the duration of an emergency, then forthwith on the abatement of that emergency, those works shall be removed or, as the case may require, filled.

(3) Nothing in paragraph (b) of subsection (1) of this section shall be construed to affect the control of Lake Hawea, the Hawea River, or any works existing at the commencement of this Act between lake Hawea and the confluence of the Hawea River and the Clutha River.

7. Existing rights to remain

Where, at the commencement of this Act, there exists any right or power vested, authorised, or conferred by or granted pursuant to any other Act which will allow the holder to take water from the lake, or discharge

water or any other substances (whether dissolved or suspended in water or not) into the lake, or disturb or alter the shoreline of the lake, then that right or power shall continue and may be exercised in the same manner and to the same extent as if this Act had not been passed, but the holder shall, in so exercising the right or power, have regard to the purposes of this Act.

8. Otago Regional Water Board to implement policy of the Government

(1) In the exercise of its functions under the Resource Management Act 1991 in respect of the lake and its tributaries, the Otago Regional Water Board shall have regard to the purposes of this Act and shall give effect to the policy of the Government in relation to those functions as communicated to it from time to time in writing by the Minister of Conservation.

9. Administering bodies of public reserves to implement policy of the Government

(1) This section shall apply to a public reserve (within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977) which adjoins, is adjacent to, or is in the vicinity of the shore of the lake, or is on or is an island in the lake.

(2) In the exercise of its functions, the administering body (within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977) of a public reserve to which this section applies shall have regard to the purposes of this Act, and shall give effect to the policy of the Government in relation to a public reserve to which this section applies as communicated to the administering body from time to time in writing by the Minister of Conservation or, when directed to do so by that Minister, by the Director-General of Conservation.

10. Communications of Ministers to be laid before Parliament

A copy of every communication made under subsection (1) of section 8 or subsection (2) of section 9 of this Act shall be laid before Parliament as soon as practicable after it has been made.

11. Harbour works on lake restricted

No Regional Council shall grant a resource consent under the Resource Management Act 1991 authorising any activity in relation to the lake that is referred to in section 13 or section 14 of that Act without first-

(a) Seeking the advice of the Guardians of Lake Wanaka on the proposed activity concerned, and considering all advice received from them within a reasonable time of its being sought; and

(b) Having regard to the purposes of this Act.

12. No derogation from provisions of Act

No provision of any Act shall derogate from the provisions of this Act unless that provision expressly so provides.

Decision: E1e

Glossary

Terms marked with an asterisk * are terms defined by the Resource Management Act 1991.

In this Plan, the spelling of Māori words using ng and k is interchangeable (for example Ngāi Tahu and Kāi Tahu).

Abandoned structure	A structure that is no longer required or utilised for the purpose for which it was erected or placed.
Access strip*	Means a strip of land created by the registration of an easement in accordance with Section 237B (of the Resource Management Act 1991) for the purpose of allowing public access to or along any river, or lake, or the coast, or to any esplanade reserve, esplanade strip, other reserve, or land owned by the local authority or by the Crown (but excluding all land held for a public work except land held, administered or managed under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Acts named in the First Schedule to that Act).
Adverse effect	A detrimental effect.
Aerial discharge	The discharge of any agrichemical from any aircraft.
Agricultural and horticultural activities *(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)*	All activities involved with the primary industries of agriculture and horticulture, including common stock drinking-water schemes, but excludes processing agricultural and horticulture produce.
Agricultural waste	Waste from an agricultural process or premises that is derived from primary agricultural production. This includes animal waste and animal dip material.
Allocation limit or allocation volume	The maximum flow or quantity of water in a water body, which is able to be allocated to resource consents for taking.
Alluvium	Sediment including rock, gravel, sand or silt material deposited by flowing water on floodplains and in lake and river beds, as a result of alluvial processes.
Alteration of the bed	Any bed disturbance, reclamation or deposition.
Amenity values*	Means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.
Animal waste	Faeces or urine from any animal.

Annual renewable yield	The amount of water that can be withdrawn annually from a groundwater basin or aquifer, without producing an adverse effect. Also known as "safe yield", or "sustainable yield".
Annual volume *(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)*	The volume of water that can be taken or diverted in any 12-month period.
Anticipated environmental result	The intended result or outcome on the environment as a consequence of implementing the policies and methods.
Any other activities *(definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)*	Activities that are not agricultural and horticultural activities, hydro-electricity generation, industrial and commercial activities, tourism and recreation facilities, or town and community water supplies.
Aquatic plant	Any plant species that grows in water and is either totally or predominantly submerged in water.
Aquifer	A geological formation capable of holding water.
Aquifer compression	A reduction in an aquifer's capacity to hold water.
Archaeological site	Any place in New Zealand that (a) EITHER – (i) Was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or (ii) Is the site of the wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and (b) Is or may be able through investigation by archaeological methods to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand. - defined by Section 2 of the Historic Places Act 1993.
Artesian pressure	The pressure of water in a confined aquifer resulting in water level rise above the bottom of the confining layer.
Assimilative capacity	The ability of a water body to assimilate contaminants without adversely affecting the natural and human use values supported by the water body.
Augmentation	Increasing the supply of available water through the active management of water resources.

Back-flow The return of water to the source water body, through the device used to take water, including back-siphoning.

Bed* Means, -

(a) In relation to any river-
  (i) For the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks:
  (ii) In all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and

(b) In relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means, -
  (i) For the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin:
  (ii) In all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and

(c) In relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and

(d) In relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea.

Bed disturbance Any activity which affects the bed or bank of a water body and includes any excavation, dredging, drilling, tunnelling, and any widening, deepening or altering of the course of the water body.

Bedform The topography or shape of the bed of a lake or river.

Bed material The sand, gravel or other alluvium forming part of the bed of a lake or river.

Benthic invertebrate An animal without a backbone (e.g. snail, crustacean, worm, insect) living on, under, or within the bed material of a water body.

BOD_5 The quantity of oxygen consumed by microbial and chemical processes over a five day period at 20 degrees.

Bore Every device or means, including any well or pit, which is drilled or constructed for the purpose of taking groundwater, or which results in groundwater being taken, other than piezometers constructed for water sampling purposes only.

Bore interference The reduced ability of users in a localised area to take water from a bore, due to the taking of water from another bore, reducing the pressure and/or the level of groundwater.

Bunding Constructing an embankment or low wall (usually concrete) designed to contain accidental spillage of a stored liquid.

CFU Colony-Forming Units, an indication of faecal contamination.

Cleanfill A natural material such as sand, gravel and rock, and such other materials as concrete, brick or demolition products that are free of soluble materials and are therefore not subject to biological or chemical breakdown.

Coastal marine area* Means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water -

(a) Of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea:

(b) Of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of -

(i) One kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or

(ii) The point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5.

Conditions* In relation to plans and resource consents, includes terms, standards, restrictions, and prohibitions.

Consent authority* Means a regional council, a territorial authority, or a local authority that is both a regional council and a territorial authority, whose permission is required to carry out an activity for which a resource consent is required under the Resource Management Act 1991.

Consumptive use Where a use results in a net loss of water from the water body.

Contact recreation Recreational activities involving contact with water; either primary (full immersion) or secondary (that which may result in some form of contact with water).

Contaminant* Includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy or heat -

(a) When discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or

(b) When discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.

Contaminated land Land at which hazardous substances occur at concentrations above background levels and where assessment indicates that that land poses, or is likely to pose, an immediate or long-term hazard to human health or the environment.

Contravene* Includes fail to comply with.

Controlled activity* If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a controlled activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -

(a) The consent authority must grant a resource consent (except if Section 106 of the Act applies); and

(b) The consent authority's power to impose conditions on the resource consent is restricted to the matters over which control is reserved (whether in its plan or proposed plan, a national environmental standard, or otherwise); and

(c) The activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.

Controlled lake A lake where structures are used to manage the quantity of water leaving the lake.

Dam A structure used or to be used for the damming of any water, or water body.

Datum The fixed level for basing subsequent level measurements, in this case datum is 100 metres below mean sea level.

Deemed permit A mining privilege in respect of water (see Appendix 2).

Defence against water Any dam, weir, bank, carriageway, groyne, or reservoir, and any structure or appliance of any kind which has or may have the effect of stopping, diverting, controlling, restricting, or otherwise regulating the flow or spread or subsidence, in or out of a water body, of water including flood waters, which is specifically established for the purpose of flood hazard mitigation.

Deposition The deposit of any substance, other than water or waterborne contaminants (discharge), or fill material (reclamation).

Discharge* Includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape.

Discretionary activity* If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a discretionary activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -

(a) The consent authority may decline the consent or grant the consent with or without conditions; and

(b) If granted, the activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.

Disposal field That part of a constructed on-site waste water treatment system

	where the effluent is discharged to land.
District plan*	(a) Means an operative plan approved by a territorial authority under Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991; and (b) Includes all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise).
Divert	In relation to the diversion of water, is the process of redirecting the flow of water from its existing course to another.
Down-hole pump test	A test conducted to determine aquifer or bore characteristics.
Drain	Artificial channel or subsurface conduit (e.g. mole drain, tile drain or drainage tunnel) constructed to either lower the watertable or divert water, excluding a water race.
Drainage water	Water collected by and discharged from a drain.
Drilling	The process of creating a hole in the ground with a drill to a depth greater than 1 metre. This does not include hole creation for the purpose of: • The construction of a bore; • The erection of fences or overhead utilities; or • The placement of building foundations.
Drill hole	The hole created by drilling.
Drinking-water supply reservoir	A reservoir which is used primarily for the purpose of storing a supply of drinking water.
Ecosystem	A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.
Effect*	In the Resource Management Act 1991, unless the context otherwise requires, the term effect includes - (a) Any positive or adverse effect; and (b) Any temporary or permanent effect; and (c) Any past, present, or future effect; and (d) Any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects - regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes - (e) Any potential effect of high probability; and (f) Any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.
Effluent	Liquid waste, including liquid leaching from solid waste.

Enforcement order*

Means an order made under Section 319 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for any purposes set out in Section 314 of the Act; and includes an interim enforcement order made under Section 320 of the Act.

Environment*

Includes -

(a) Ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and
(b) All natural and physical resources; and
(c) Amenity values; and
(d) The social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) of this definition or which are affected by those matters.

Environmental flow and level regimes (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)

The flow-sharing, allocation limits and minimum flows and levels established by the Water Plan as specified in Rule 12.1.4.4A.

Erosion

The processes of the wearing away of the land surface (including the land that forms the bed of a lake or river) by natural agents and the transport of the material that results.

Esplanade reserve*

Means a reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977 -

(a) Which is either -
    (i) A local purpose reserve within the meaning of Section 23 of that Act, if vested in the territorial authority under Section 239 of the Resource Management Act 1991; or
    (ii) A reserve vested in the Crown or a regional council under Section 237D of the Resource Management Act 1991; and
(b) Which is vested in the territorial authority, regional council, or the Crown for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Esplanade strip*

Means a strip of land created by the registration of an instrument in accordance with Section 232 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for a purpose or purposes set out in Section 229 of the Act.

Excavation over a groundwater protection zone

The digging and removal of a volume of earth material from below the topsoil horizon in excess of 10 cubic metres, or to a depth of greater than 1 metre, but does not include that required for bore construction, or for the erection of fences, overhead utilities or foundations for buildings, or for land cultivation.

Exotic plant

A plant which is not native to New Zealand. These may include introduced plants which have been brought in by accident or design.

Extraction	Removal of material from the lake or river system.
Faecal coliform	A type of bacteria associated with animal excrement that indicates faecal pollution. If the faecal coliform count is high there may be disease-causing organisms present.
Fauna	All the animal life of a given place.
Feed pad	Any confined, uncovered structure, located on production land, which is designed for the purpose of controlled intensive feeding of stock with supplementary feed.
Fertiliser	Any proprietary substance specifically manufactured for use in increasing the nutrient status of land.
Financial contribution	A contribution as set out in Section 108(9) of the Resource Management Act.
Fisheries and wildlife (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	Activities relating to the management and enhancement of habitats of fish and indigenous wildlife.
Flood carrying capacity	The capacity of any channel to convey flood waters.
Flooding of any other person's property	Where a discharge of water or contaminants on one property causes inundation on another property.
Flora	All the plant life of a given place.
Flushes	Wet or damp areas of ground where the watertable intersects the land surface. Characterised by the presence of wetland species such as Sphagnum, and a greener, more lush appearance than surrounding vegetation.
Ford	Any modification of the bed to establish a crossing by which any vehicle, livestock, or persons may traverse through any water body.
Galaxias	The genus name of members of the native fish family Galaxiidae, which includes inanga (whitebait) and banded kokopu.
Galaxiid	A member of the native fish family Galaxiidae.
Grassed swale	An open artificial water body or drain with gently-sloping walls of permeable material that conducts water only when the substrate is saturated.
Groundwater	Water that occupies or moves through openings, cavities or spaces

	in geological formations under the ground.
Groundwater protection zone	An area of land in which land use and water use activities are to be managed to protect the underlying groundwater resource.
Hapu	Sub-tribe, extended whanau.
Hazardous substance	Unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations, any substance - (a) With one or more of the following intrinsic properties: (i) Explosiveness: (ii) Flammability: (iii) A capacity to oxidise: (iv) Corrosiveness: (v) Toxicity (including chronic toxicity): (vi) Ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or (a) Which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any one or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a) of this definition. - defined by Section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.
Herbicide	Substance toxic to plants and used to kill or control plants.
High degree of naturalness	Retaining characteristics not significantly modified by human beings or non-indigenous plants or animals.
Historic place	Any land (including an archaeological site); or any building or structure (including part of a building or structure); or any combination of land and a building or structure that forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand; and includes anything that is in or fixed to such land.
Hydrological values	The natural processes of an ecosystem in providing regulated water flow and enhanced water quality.
Impervious strata	A layer of soil, rock or other natural material which does not allow the percolation of water.
In-catchment needs (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	Water requirements of users where the water is taken or diverted for use within the Waitaki catchment.
Indigenous species	A New Zealand native species that is, or is thought to have been, naturally existing within the catchment.
Industrial and	Industrial and commercial activities (but excluding hydro-electricity

commercial activities (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	generation) that are not served by a reticulated town and community water supply.
Industrial or trade premises*	Means - (a) Any premises used for any industrial or trade purposes; or (b) Any premises used for the storage, transfer, treatment, or disposal of waste materials or for other waste-management purposes, or used for composting organic materials; or (c) Any other premises from which a contaminant is discharged in connection with any industrial or trade process - but does not include any production land.
Industrial or trade process*	Includes every part of a process from the receipt of raw material to the dispatch or use in another process or disposal of any product or waste material, and any intervening storage of the raw material, partly processed matter, or product.
Industrial or trade waste	Waste from an industrial or trade premises, that is derived from an industrial or trade process.
Instantaneous take	All takes of water occurring at a particular time.
Intake structure	The device by which water is taken from a water body.
Intrinsic values*	In relation to ecosystems, means those aspects of ecosystems and their constituent parts which have value in their own right, including - (a) Their biological and genetic diversity; and (b) The essential characteristics that determine any ecosystem's integrity, form, functioning, and resilience.
Issue	A matter of concern to the region's community regarding activities affecting some aspect of natural and physical resources and the environment of the region.
Iwi	Tribe.
Iwi authority*	Means the authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so. (The iwi authority for the Otago region is Te Runanga O Ngai Tahu).
Iwi management plan	A relevant planning document, such as the Kai Tahu Ki Otago Natural Resource Management Plan, recognised by an iwi authority affected by this Plan, to which local authorities shall have regard.
Kai Tahu	Descendants of Tahu, the tribe. The manawhenua of the Otago

	region. (Also known as Ngai Tahu).
Kāi Tahu or Ngāi Tahu (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	The collection of individuals who descend from the primary hapū of Waitaha, Ngāti Mamoe, and Ngāi Tahu, namely Kāti Kurī, Kāti Irakehu, Kāti Huirapa, Ngāi Tuahuriri and Kai Te Ruahikihiki.
Kaitiaki	Guardians.
Kaitiakitanga*	Means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Maori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship.
Kanakana	The primitive parasitic native fresh water lamprey, Geotria australis.
Kokopu	Native fish species of the Galaxiid family, including banded kokopu (Galaxias fasciatus) and giant kokopu (G. argenteus), sometimes referred to as 'native trout'.
Koura	Native fresh water crayfish of the genus Paranephrops.
Lake Tuakitoto	The variable and more or less continuous body of water commonly known as Lake Tuakitoto, including Robson's Lagoon, situated at and about map reference NZMS260 H46:650370. The shoreline of the lake is defined as the variable extent of surface water, as it is observed at any particular time, whether of natural extent or whether restricted by any floodbank.
Lake*	Means a body of fresh water which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land.
Land*	(a) Includes land covered by water and the air space above land; and (b) In a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under Section 30 of the Resource Management Act 1991 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and (c) In a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under Section 31 of the Act or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river.
Land-based discharge	The discharge of any agrichemical from any thing other than any aircraft.
Land drainage	The removal of water from in or on land.
Landholder	Includes land owner, lessee and occupier.

Landholding	(1) For land subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952, land in: (i) A single certificate of title; or (ii) Two or more adjoining certificates of title, with a common occupier. (2) For land not subject to the Land Transfer Act 1952, all contiguous land last acquired under one instrument of conveyance and occupied by a common occupier.
Lawful take of water	Any take under Section 14(3) of the Resource Management Act, any take exercised under Rules 12.1.2.1 to 12.1.2.6, or 12.2.2.1 to 12.2.2.3 of this Plan, any take exercised under the Transitional Regional Plan rule constituted by General Authorisations 1 to 5, 9 and 12, and any take under any resource consent or deemed permit under the Resource Management Act 1991.
Leachate	A liquid contaminant resulting from the liquid being exuded from or percolated through some more-or-less solid matter.
Legal public access	Includes legal roads, marginal strips, esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, access strips and Walkways.
Line	A wire or conductor (including a fibre optic cable) used or intended to be used for telecommunication or transmission of electricity.
Local authority	A term that collectively describes regional councils, city councils, and district councils.
Long-drop toilet	An unlined hole or pit excavated for the disposal of human sewage, which is not subject to any treatment or flushing.
Macro-invertebrate Community Index (MCI)	An index of the proportion of sensitive to tolerant species (designed to assess the effects of nutrient enrichment in stoney streams, but also affected by dissolved oxygen, temperature and physical habitat features), among the community of benthic invertebrates that can be seen with the naked eye (see Appendix 1).
Mahika kai	Places where food is procured or produced, examples in the case of waterborne mahika kai include eels, whitebait, kanakana, kokopu, koura, fresh water mussels, indigenous waterfowl, watercress and raupo.
Main stem	The principal course of a river (i.e. does not include tributaries).
Mana	Authority, influence or prestige.
Manawhenua*	Means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area.
Margin	Land alongside a river or lake.

Mauri	Life force; for example the mauri of a river is most recognisable when there is abundance of water flow and the associated ecosystems are healthy and plentiful; a most important element in the relationship that Kai Tahu have with the water bodies of Otago.
MCI	See Macroinvertebrate Community Index.
Mean high water springs	The average line of spring high tide.
Method	The practical action by which a policy is implemented.
Micro hydro-electricity generation (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	The generation of hydro-electricity not exceeding a capacity of 50 Kilowatts continuous output.
Minimum flow	The flow below which the holder of any resource consent to take water must cease taking water.
Mining privilege	See Appendix 2.
Mixing zone	An area of water associated with a discharge within which any standards or requirements relating to water quality are set aside to enable reasonable mixing to occur. (See Reasonable mixing).
Mouth*	For the purpose of defining the landward boundary of the coastal marine area, means the mouth of a river either - (a) As agreed and set between the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority in the period between consultation on, and notification of, the proposed regional coastal plan; or (b) As declared by the Environment Court under Section 310 of the Resource Management Act 1991 upon application made by the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, or the territorial authority prior to the plan becoming operative, - and once so agreed and set or declared shall not be changed in accordance with Schedule 1 of the Act or otherwise varied, altered, questioned, or reviewed in any way until the next review of the regional coastal plan, unless the Minister of Conservation, the regional council, and the appropriate territorial authority agree.
Natural and human use values	Characteristics of a water body which are important to, or are an essential part of, ecological communities, or are enjoyed or utilised by people and communities. While some of these values are identified in Schedule 1, natural character, amenity values, existing lawful uses, and archaeological sites will be identified on a case-by-

	case basis.
Natural and physical resources*	Includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures.
Natural hazard*	Means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.
Noa	Free from tapu or other restriction.
Non-biodegradable	Unable to be decomposed by living organisms present in the particular receiving environment.
Non-complying activity*	If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including a national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a non-complying activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and the consent authority may - (a) Decline the consent; or (b) Grant the consent, with or without conditions, but only if the consent authority is satisfied that the requirements of Section 104D of the Act are met and the activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.
Non-point source discharge	A discharge of water or contaminant that enters a water body from a diffuse source, such as land runoff or infiltration.
Notified use	Any right in respect of natural water which was notified under Section 21 (2) or 21 (2A) of the Water and Soil Conservation Act 1967 (an 'existing authority' under Section 386(1)(b) of the Resource Management Act 1991).
Objective	The desired result, end state, situation or condition that is aimed for.
Occupier*	Means - (a) The inhabitant occupier of any property; and (b) [Repealed] (c) For the purposes of Section 16 of the Resource Management Act 1991, in relation to any land (including any premises and any coastal marine area), includes any agent, employee, or other person acting or apparently acting in the general management or control of the land, or any plant or machinery on that land.
On-site waste water treatment system	Any system, such as a septic tank, designed to treat household liquid effluent including sewage within the boundary of the property on which the effluent was generated, and includes the treatment

system and any attached disposal field.

Open pile(d) The nature of a structure's supporting piles whereby no significant hindrance to the passage of water or sediment is caused.

Operative* In relation to a policy statement or plan, or a provision of a policy statement or plan, means that the policy statement, plan, or provision -

(a) Has become operative -
  (i) In terms of clause 20 of Schedule 1 of the Resource Management Act 1991; or
  (ii) Under Section 86F of the Act; and
(b) Has not ceased to be operative.

Papatipu Runanga The Papatipu Runanga and their takiwa for the Otago Region are described in the schedule to the Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu Act 1996.

Percent probability flood A flood event which has a particular probability of being exceeded in any 12 month period.

Permitted activity* If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a permitted activity, a resource consent is not required for the activity if it complies with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.

Person* Includes the Crown, a corporation sole, and also a body of persons, whether corporate or unincorporate.

Pest plant Any plant specified as a pest in a pest management strategy written under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

Pesticide A substance or mixture of substances used to kill or control unwanted species of plants, animals or other organisms.

Policy The course of action to achieve the objective.

Point source discharge A discharge of water or contaminant that enters a water body at a definable point, often through a pipe or drain.

Primary allocation The ~~volume~~ quantity of water established under Policy 6.4.2 ~~which is able to be taken subject to a primary allocation minimum flow as set under Policy 6.4.3, 6.4.4 or 6.4.6~~.

Decision: A3b

Production land* (a) Means any land and auxiliary buildings used for the production (but not processing) of primary products (including agricultural, pastoral, horticultural, and forestry

products):
(b) Does not include land or auxiliary buildings used or associated with prospecting, exploration, or mining for minerals -
and "production" has a corresponding meaning.

Prohibited activity*

If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including a national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a prohibited activity, -
(a) No application for a resource consent may be made for the activity; and
(b) The consent authority must not grant a consent for it.

Proposed plan*

In the Resource Management Act 1991, unless the context otherwise requires, proposed plan -
(a) Means a proposed plan, a variation to a proposed plan or change, or a change to a plan proposed by a local authority that has been notified under clause 5 of Schedule 1 but has not become operative in terms of clause 20 of Schedule 1; and
(b) Includes a proposed plan or a change to a plan proposed by a person under Part 2 of Schedule 1 that has been adopted by the local authority under clause 25(2)(a) of Schedule 1.

Protective soil mantle

A layer of soil, rock or other natural material which reduces the percolation of water.

Public notice*

(a) Means a notice published in a newspater circulating in the entire area likely to be affected by the proposal to which the notice relates; and
(b) If a local authority also publishes a notice on an Internet site to which the public have free access, includes that notice.

Rahui

Restrictions.

Reasonable mixing

The process where undiluted effluent disperses through receiving waters. Mixing results in a mixing zone where the concentration of contaminants varies from that in the effluent to that of the fully mixed receiving water. Reasonable mixing may be said to have occurred at some point between the point of discharge and the point at which the effluent is completely mixed with the receiving water. Beyond the reasonable mixing zone, the effluent and water mix complies with any water quality standards for the water body.

Reclamation

The permanent infilling of a water body or part of a water body with sand, rock, quarry material, concrete, or other similar material, for any purpose, and includes any embankment or causeway, but does not include any structure above water where that structure is supported by piles, or any deposition of material or infilling that is not permanent.

Regional plan*

(a) Means an operative plan approved by a regional council under

Schedule 1 (including all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)); and
(b) Includes a regional coastal plan.

Registered Historic Place — Any Historic Place registered under Part II of the Historic Places Act 1993.

Residual flow — Refer to Policy 6.4.7.

Resource consent — A consent for an activity as set out in Section 87 of the Resource Management Act 1991; and includes all conditions to which the consent is subject.

~~Note: A new resource consent is where the provisions of Section 124 of the Resource Management Act do not apply.~~

~~A replacement resource consent is where the provisions of Section 124 of the Resource Management Act apply.~~

Decision: E1f

Restricted discretionary activity* — If an activity is described in the Resource Management Act 1991, regulations (including any national environmental standard), a plan, or a proposed plan as a restricted discretionary activity, a resource consent is required for the activity and -
(a) The consent authority's power to decline a consent, or to grant a consent and to impose conditions on the consent, is restricted to the matters over which discretion is restricted (whether in its plan or proposed plan, a national environmental standard, or otherwise); and
(b) The activity must comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions, if any, specified in the Act, regulations, plan, or proposed plan.

Reticulated system, or reticulation — The means by which water, stormwater, sewage or other waterborne contaminant is collected and delivered prior to discharge.

Riparian vegetation — The terrestrial plants growing on the bed or margin of a water body.

River* — Means a continually or intermittently flowing body of fresh water; and includes a stream and modified watercourse; but does not include any artificial watercourse (including an irrigation canal, water supply race, canal for the supply of water for electricity power generation, and farm drainage canal).

Runanga — Local representative groups or community system of organisation.

Sacrifice paddock — Any paddock which is set aside for the prolonged confinement and

	the controlled, intensive feeding of stock with supplementary feed, in order to avoid damage to their usual pasture.
Seven-day ("7-day") mean annual low flow	The seven-day low flow in any year is determined by calculating the average flow over seven consecutive days for every seven consecutive day period in the year, and choosing the lowest. When this is done for every year of record, the seven-day mean annual low flow can be determined by adding the lowest seven-day low flows for every year of record and dividing by the number of years in the record.
Small dam	A dam: (a) Where the size of the catchment upstream of the dam is no more than 50 hectares; and (b) where the water stored immediately upstream of the dam is no more than 3 metres deep; and (c) where the volume of water stored by the dam is no more than 20,000 cubic metres.
Soil contamination	Occurs where the discharge of a contaminant reduces the primary productive capacity of soil.
Stand-off pad	Any purpose-built uncovered area, located on production land, for the confinement of stock in order to avoid damage to their usual pasture.
Stormwater	The water running off from any impervious surface such as roads, carparks, roofs, and sealed runways.
Structure*	Means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft.
Suction dredging; Suction dredge mining	Any activity utilising a motor, pump, and hose within a river bed.
Sullage	The waste water from sinks, basins, baths, showers and similar appliances, but not including toilet wastes (sometimes referred to as grey water).
Supplementary allocation	A volume of water established under Policies 6.4.9 or 6.4.10 which is able to be taken subject to a supplementary allocation minimum flow set under those policies.
Suspended solids	Particulate matter carried in suspension within water.
Taking	In relation to the taking of water, is the process of extracting the water for any purpose and for any period of time.

Taoka	Treasures.
Tapu	Sacred.
Tarn	Small mountain lake or pool, often formed in a cirque basin.
Technical efficiency (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	Using a resource in a way that any given output is produced at least cost, including avoiding waste.
Territorial local authority	A term that collectively describes city councils and district councils, but not regional councils.
The Act	The Resource Management Act 1991.
To Dam	In relation to the damming of water, is the process of impounding the water for any purpose and for any period of time, as in a reservoir.
Tourism and recreation facilities (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	Tourism and recreation facilities that are not served by a reticulated town and community supply, such as hotels, lodges, restaurants and ski fields.
Town and community water supply (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	Reticulated water supplies servicing urban areas, rural-residential and residential subdivisions including all commercial and industrial premises and schools and other educational facilities located within the reticulated area.
Trace amount of any contaminant	A contaminant is present in a quantity that is incapable of practicable measurement.
Transmissivity	The degree to which an aquifer allows water to pass through it.
Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)	The same meaning as the word "Treaty" as defined in Section 2 of the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975.
Upland bogs	A wet or spongy high altitude area of ground chiefly composed of decaying vegetable matter or peat.
~~**Use**~~	~~In relation to the use of water, is the passive use of water that does not involve any extraction, damming, diversion or discharge.~~

Vegetation	Includes any trees, shrubs, plants or grasses.
Vessel	Every description of ship, boat, ferry, or craft used in navigation, whether or not it has any means of propulsion, and regardless of that means; and includes: a barge, lighter, or other like vessel; a hovercraft or other thing deriving full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reactions of air against the surface of the water over which it operates; a submarine or other thing used in navigation whilst totally submerged.
Waahi taoka	Treasured resource; values, sites and resources that are valued and reinforce the special relationship Kai Tahu have with Otago's water resources.
Waahi tapu	Sacred places; sites, areas and values associated with water bodies that hold spiritual values of importance to Kai Tahu.
Waitaki catchment (definition only applies where term is underlined in this Plan)	(a) Means the area of land bounded by watersheds draining into the Waitaki River; and (b) Includes aquifers wholly or partially within that area of land.
Walkway	A formal Walkway created under the New Zealand Walkways Act 1975.
Water*	(a) Means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground: (b) Includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water: (c) Does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern.
Water allocation committee	Refer to Policies 6.4.12 and 9.4.12.
Water body*	Means fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, wetland, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area.
Water conservation order*	Has the meaning set out in Section 200 of the Resource Management Act 1991.
"Water Info" phone	The telephone service by which the Otago Regional Council provides frequently-updated information on water body condition including river flows.
Water race	An artificial channel used for conveying water for various uses, but not for the drainage of land.

Water supply values	The existence of a take for human consumption, which people and communities have come to depend upon.
Water user group	Refer to Policy 5.4.12.
Wet bed	That part of the bed of a lake or river which is covered by water.
Wetland*	Includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.
Whanau	Family.
Whanui	Large, extended, broad.

Appendices

1 The Macroinvertebrate Community Index

The most widely used and effective form of biological monitoring in streams and rivers is the sampling and analysis of the invertebrate life (aquatic insects, crustaceans, snails, worms etc) living on the bed or amongst aquatic plants. These invertebrates are almost always found in abundance in such habitats, they are easy to collect, and with suitable resources they are easy to identify.

Typically there are 15 to 30 distinct "species" (or taxa) of invertebrates at most stream or river sites. The composition of these communities is dependent on physical habitat characteristics, water quality and biological factors. If physical habitat quality is kept consistent (eg sampling is undertaken in fast-flowing, shallow stony "riffles" rather than slow flowing pools or backwaters) water quality tends to become the factor determining community composition.

Some "tolerant" invertebrate species are able to inhabit degraded waters such as algae-smothered habitats or nutrient enriched or low oxygen waters. Other species are highly sensitive to such conditions and are almost always found in cool, "clean" (low-nutrient), high-oxygen waters.

The fresh water biological index referred to in this Plan (see Policy 7.6.2) is the Macroinvertebrate Community Index (MCI). The MCI was developed for New Zealand stony streams by Dr John Stark in 1985, using a British system (the BMWP Index) which assigned sensitivity scores to particular fresh water invertebrate species. These scores relate to the ability of each species to tolerate nutrient enrichment and associated water quality degradation. The scores range from one (for the most tolerant species) to ten (for the most sensitive species). For example, the "swimming mayfly" has a sensitivity score of 9, while the common sandfly has a sensitivity score of 3.

An MCI value is calculated simply by averaging the sensitivity scores for the species found at one site, and multiplying this average by a scaling factor of 20. A high MCI value (over 100) is generally indicative of good water quality, although it will vary depending upon the river type, as shown in Table 5.

Table 5: MCI ranges for different stream and river habitat types

River type	Habitat quality (MCI score)		
	High quality	Medium quality	Low quality
Stony riffle	100 - 130	80 - 100	60 - 80
Fine sandy/gravelly runs	90 - 110	70 - 90	50 - 70
Weedy/muddy runs/pools	80 - 100	60 - 80	40 - 60

The MCI value can therefore be used to indicate the state of water quality in Otago's streams and rivers.

The expected MCI scores for the water bodies identified in Policy 7.6.2, as well as the actual observed MCI scores, are shown in Table 5. The expected MCI scores become the target for enhancing water quality in the identified water bodies.

Table 6: Water bodies with degraded water quality for aquatic habitats.

Water body	Habitat type	Average observed MCI score	Expected MCI score
Hayes Creek	Weedy/muddy runs	67	> 70
Lower Horne Creek	Stony riffle	76	> 80
Lower Kaikorai Stream	Stony riffle	70	> 80
Lower Taieri River	Weedy/muddy pools	69	> 70
Lower Waipori River	Weedy/muddy pools	68	> 70
Lower Tokomairiro River	Weedy/muddy pools	69	> 70
Lower Owaka River	Stony run	76	> 80
Lower Waiareka Creek	Weedy/muddy pools	68	> 70
Lower Kaihiku Stream	Stony riffle	74	> 80
Lower Wairuna River	Stony riffle	79	>80

2 Mining privileges in respect of water (deemed permits)

A number of Otago water bodies are subject to the taking of water through the exercising of mining privileges in respect of water ("mining privileges" for short, but now known as "deemed permits"). Mining privileges were issued under the Mining Act 1926, and earlier mining legislation, and provided for the taking, damming and discharging of water. However, as gold mining declined, this water was increasingly used for irrigation. The Crown acquired a number of the higher priority, significant mining privileges which were being used for irrigation schemes, and these were then disposed of to the community irrigation groups.

Under Section 413 of the Resource Management Act, all mining privileges were deemed to become either a water permit (for the taking or damming of water), or a discharge permit (for the discharge of contaminants) on the same terms and conditions as the original mining privilege. Under Section 415 and 416 of the Act, compensation must be paid for the acquisition of any such deemed permit, or any restriction of its ability to be exercised.

As provided by Section 413(3), deemed permits expire on 1 October 2021, the thirtieth anniversary of the date of commencement of the Act, at which time they will lose their priority and there shall no longer be any liability for compensation as a result of loss or restriction of the rights. After 1 October 2021, resource consent is required in place of a deemed permit to take water and Section 124 of the Act applies.

Deemed permits can, however, be restricted by an abatement notice, enforcement order or by a Water Shortage Direction issued under Section 329 of the Resource Management Act.

Decision: D1b

2A Water management groups

Water management groups, established in terms of Policy 6.4.12A, provide the opportunity for groups to become more responsible for managing their taking by allowing for individual or shared consents to be managed by the group. Lists 2A.1 and 2A.2 set out the Council's requirements for the approval and features of such groups. The form of the group is not otherwise limited by the Council and the group may also exercise other roles to meet member needs.

2A.1 List of criteria for approval of a water management group

For a group to be approved by the Council as a water management group with authority and responsibility for specified resource consents (including deemed permits), the Council must be satisfied that:

(a) A schedule has been provided that specifies the resource consents which are to be managed by the water management group; and

(b) The water management group has an appropriate form and rules; and

(c) The water management group seeks to be granted authority and responsibility to manage the specified consents; and

(d) The water management group is able to provide documentary evidence that their members, including scheduled consents holders, agree to be bound by the group.

2A.2 Other features of a water management group

A water management group which has been approved by the Council in terms of List 2A.1 above:

(a) May have a terminating date or criteria;

(b) May apply to have other resource consents included within its management;

(ba) May have the whole or any part of the interest in a consent transferred to it;

(c) Must have amendments of its form and rules approved by the Council;

(d) May have its authority to manage the specified consents revoked, in part or in full, either;

(i) On its request; or

(ii) On receipt of not less than 6 months' written notice by the Council;

(e) Must report annually to the Council on the operation of the group; and

(f) May have a rationing regime approved by the Council.

Decisions: C1a, Clf, Clc, E1a, Clf

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

3 Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act Statutory Acknowledgements

Introduction

Statutory acknowledgements are recorded in the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (the NTCS Act) for several water bodies, mountains and coastal features in the Otago Region.

The following pages contain the text from the Schedules to the NTCS Act (as extracted from Brookers New Zealand Statutes) that describe the statutory acknowledgement sites that occur in Otago. Each schedule contains:

- The statutory area involved,
- A standard preamble,
- A description of the Ngai Tahu association with the site, and
- Standard statements of purposes, and limitations on effect, of the statutory acknowledgement.

These acknowledgements comprise a statement made by Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu of the particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngai Tahu (Kai Tahu) with these areas.

Part 12 of the NTCS Act provides details of statutory acknowledgements, and the responsibilities relating to them. Section 208 of that act requires that local authorities have regard to these statutory acknowledgements in resource consent processing under Sections 93 to 94(C) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (Notification of resource consents), in deciding whether Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu is a person who may be adversely affected by the granting of a resource consent for activities within, adjacent to or impacting directly on the statutory area.

Section 211 of the NTCS Act enables Ngai Tahu to cite these acknowledgements in submissions, or in proceedings before consent authorities or the Environment Court. In these proceedings, the contents of the 'Ngai Tahu association with the site' part of the acknowledgement in question is not binding on the consent authority (e.g. the Regional Council), but may be taken into account.

Section 220 of the NTCS Act requires that all regional policy statements, district plans and regional plans have information recording those statutory acknowledgements for areas covered by the policy statement or plan attached to them. The attachment of this information may be by way of reference, or be set out in full (as is the case here). This is for the purpose of public information only and does not form part of the policy statement or plan.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Index:

The statutory acknowledgement areas for Otago are arranged as follows –

[All page numbering to be updated]

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 62

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TITITEA (MOUNT ASPIRING)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the mountain known as Tititea (Mount Aspiring), located in the Mount Aspiring National Park, as shown on Allocation Plan MS 2 (SO 24665).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Tititea as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Tititea
As with all principal maunga (mountains), Tititea is imbued with the spiritual elements of Raki and Papa, in tradition and practice regarded as an important link to the primeval parents. Tititea is a prominent and majestic peak, clearly visible from a number of vantage points in the south, and its role in Ngai Tahu's creation stories gives rise to its tapu status. From the heights above Te Ana-au (Lake Te Anau), it is a particularly impressive sight when the sun is setting.

The most common Ngai Tahu name for the mountain known to Pakeha as Mount Aspiring is Tititea, referring to the mountain's white peak. It is not unusual, however, for places and physical features to have more than one name, reflecting the traditions of the successive iwi who peopled the land. Other names for the mountain include 'Makahi Ta Rakiwhanoa' (referring to a wedge belonging to Tu Te Rakiwhanoa) and 'Otapahu', which may refer to a type of dogskin cloak.

The Bonar Glacier is known as Hukairoroa Ta Parekiore (which refers to the long, hard glacial ice and crevasses formed by Parekiore). Parekiore was a giant who used to stalk up and down the South and North Islands taking titi (muttonbirds) northwards and returning with kumara. The lakes represent his footprints and the frozen splashes from his footsteps in the south were transformed into glaciers.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The area was part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as taonga. The

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land.

The mauri of Tititea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement
Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Tititea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Tititea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Tititea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement
Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Tititea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Tititea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Tititea.

SCHEDULE 51

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR PIKIRAKATAHI (MOUNT EARNSLAW)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw), as shown on Allocation Plan MS 4 (SO 24666).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Pikirakatahi as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Pikirakatahi
The creation of Pikirakatahi (Mt Earnslaw) relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the efforts of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa. It is said that during its formation a wedge of pounamu was inserted into this mountain, which is the highest and most prominent peak in this block of mountains. The mountain is also linked to the travels of Rakaihautu, who dug out the great lakes of the interior with his ko (a tool similar to a spade), known as Tu Whakaroria and later renamed Tuhiraki at the conclusion of the expedition.

The origins of the name 'Pikirakatahi' have been lost, but it is known that many places and physical features have more than one name, reflecting the traditions of the successive iwi who peopled the land. It is, however, likely that the name relates to Rakaihautu or subsequent people, as most of the prominent lakes, rivers and mountains of the interior take their name from the journey of Rakaihautu.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Pikirakatahi was of crucial significance to the many generations that journeyed to that end of Whakatipu-wai-maori (Lake Wakatipu) and beyond. Staging camps for the retrieval of pounamu were located at the base of the mountain, while semi-

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

permanent settlements related to the pounamu trade were located closer to the lake.

Pikirakatahi stands as kaitiaki (guardian) over the pounamu resource and marks the end of a trail, with the tohu (marker) to the pounamu resource sitting opposite on Koroka (Cosmos Peak). The tupuna (ancestors) had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails, places for gathering kai (food) and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the land, the relationship of people with the land and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The retrieval of large amounts of pounamu from this source, so far inland and over a range of physical barriers, attests to the importance of this resource to the economy and customs of the iwi over many generations. The people would also gather native birds for kai, and firewood with which to cook and provide warmth, from the forests covering the lower flanks of Pikirakatahi. Strategic marriages between hapu strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa and thus rights to use the resources of the mountain. It is because of these patterns of activity that Pikirakatahi continues to be important to runanga located in Otago, Murihiku and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure, Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

The mauri of Pikirakatahi represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with Pikirakatahi.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 212, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Pikirakatahi, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);
(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Pikirakatahi or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Pikirakatahi as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Pikirakatahi (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Pikirakatahi.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Pikirakatahi.

SCHEDULE 30

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR LAKE HAWEA

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Hawea, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 37 (SO 24718).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Lake Hawea, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Lake Hawea

Hawea is one of the lakes referred to in the tradition of 'Nga Puna Wai Karikari o Rakaihautu' which tells how the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu were dug by the rangatira (chief) Rakaihautu. Rakaihautu was the captain of the canoe, Uruao, which brought the tribe, Waitaha, to New Zealand. Rakaihautu beached his canoe at Whakatu (Nelson). From Whakatu, Rakaihautu divided the new arrivals in two, with his son taking one party to explore the coastline southwards and Rakaihautu taking another southwards by an inland route. On his inland journey southward Rakaihautu used his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade) to dig the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu, including Hawea.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The name Hawea may derive from Hawea, tupuna (ancestor) of the Waitaha hapu, Ngati Hawea.

Hawea was traditionally noted as a rich tuna (eel) fishery, with many thousands of the fish once being caught, preserved and transported back to the kainga nohoanga (settlements) of coastal Otago.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Hawea, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of Hawea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of Life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Lake Hawea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Lake Hawea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Lake Hawea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Lake Hawea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Lake Hawea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Lake Hawea.

SCHEDULE 36

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR LAKE WANAKA

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Wanaka, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 38 (SO 24719).

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Lake Wanaka, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Lake Wanaka

Wanaka is one of the lakes referred to in the tradition of 'Nga Puna Wai Karikari o Rakaihautu' which tells how the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu were dug by the rangatira (chief) Rakaihautu. Rakaihautu was the captain of the canoe, Uruao, which brought the tribe, Waitaha, to New Zealand. Rakaihautu beached his canoe at Whakatu (Nelson). From Whakatu, Rakaihautu divided the new arrivals in two, with his son taking one party to explore the coastline southwards and Rakaihautu taking another southwards by an inland route. On his inland journey southward Rakaihautu used his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade) to dig the principal lakes of Te Wai Pounamu, including Wanaka.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The name 'Wanaka' is considered by some to be a South Island variant of the word 'wananga' which refers to the ancient schools of learning. In these schools Ngai Tahu tohunga (men of learning) would be taught whakapapa (genealogies) which stretched back to over a hundred generations and karakia incantations) for innumerable situations. All of this learning they would be required to commit to memory.

Wanaka was traditionally noted as a rich tuna (eel) fishery, with many thousands of the fish once being caught, preserved and transported back to the kainga nohoanga (settlements) of coastal Otago.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Wanaka, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

In 1836 an eeling party was attacked by Te Puoho, a rangatira (chief) of the North Island Ngati Tama iwi. Te Puoho had plans of conquering Te Wai Pounamu, beginning his campaign at the southern end of the island. He compared his strategy to boning an eel which is started at the tail end of the fish. Having travelled down Te Tai Poutini (the West Coast) to Jackson Bay, Te Puoho crossed Haast Past into Wanaka and Lake Hawea where he found a Ngai Tahu eeling party which he captured at Makarora. Two infant girls were captured and eaten. Te Puoho suspected this family was an outpost and so he gave instructions for two guards to follow a young teenager called Pukuharuru who was ordered to show them where the main camp was. However, Pukuharuru managed to escape after dark and alert his father, Te Raki. Te Raki killed the two guards, who were lost without their guide, and the Wanaka families managed to escape the region.

Te Puoho continued his campaign at Tuturau where there were other families fishing. However, some of the people managed to escape to Tiwai Point near Bluff where they lit a warning fire. This fire alerted the southern forces and, under the leadership of Tuhawaiki, Ngai Tahu prepared to meet Te Puoho at Tuturau. After discussing the situation with the tohunga, Ngai Tahu were assured of victory. While the priests chanted their karakia to the gods of war, the heart of the enemy chief appeared before Ngai Tahu in the firelight, carried by the wings of a bird. With this omen that the gods of war were on the side of Ngai Tahu, they attacked Te Puoho the next morning.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Te Puoho was shot by a young Ngai Tahu called Topi and his army was taken captive. The head of Te Puoho was cut from his body and stuck on a pole facing his home in the north. Wanaka is therefore noted in history for its part in what was to be the last battle between North and South Island tribes.

The mauri of Wanaka represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Lake Wanaka, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Lake Wanaka or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Lake Wanaka as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Lake Wanaka (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Lake Wanaka.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Lake Wanaka.

SCHEDULE 75

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR WHAKATIPU WAI MAORI (LAKE WAKATIPU)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Whakatipu-wai-maori (Lake Wakatipu), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 39 (SO 24720).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Whakatipu-wai-maori, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Whakatipu-wai-maori
The name Whakatipu-wai-maori originates from the earliest expedition of discovery made many generations ago by the tupuna Rakaihautu and his party from the Uruao waka. Rakaihautu is traditionally credited with creating the great waterways of the interior of the island with his famous ko (a tool similar to a spade), known as Tu Whakaroria and renamed Tuhiraki at the conclusion of the expedition.

There are many traditions relating to the lake. One of the most famous tells that the hollow which forms the bed of the lake was created when the people known as Te Rapuwai came upon the giant tipua (ogre) Matau as he lay there in a deep sleep. Matau had been responsible for the disappearance of many small hunting parties and had entrapped a beautiful maiden, Manata. The father of Manata offered her in marriage to the man who could bring her safely home. Matakauri, who was in love with Manata ventured forth, discovering that Matau slept when the northwest wind blew. Matakauri selected a day when the wind was blowing the right way and set forth. He found Manata and, using his mere, he attempted to sever the bonds which held her, but try as he would he failed. Manata began to sob bitterly, and as her tears fell on the cords, they melted away. Matakauri carried Manata back to the village where they became man and wife. However, Matakauri knew that while Matau lived no maiden was safe, so he set forth when again the northwest wind blew, and set fire to the large growth of bracken that acted as a

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

bed for the giant. Matau was smothered in flames, the fat from his body augmenting the fire, until the blaze was so fierce that it burned a hole more than 1,000 feet deep. The snow on the surrounding hills melted and filled the hole, which is known today as Lake Wakatipu.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Whakatipu-wai-maori once supported nohoanga and villages which were the seasonal destinations of Otago and Murihiku (Southland) whanau and hapu for many generations, exercising ahi ka and accessing mahinga kai and providing a route to access the treasured pounamu located beyond the head of the lake. Strategic marriages between hapu strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa and thus rights to use the resources of the lake. It is because of these patterns of activity that the lake continues to be important to runanga located in Murihiku, Otago and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

The lake also supported permanent settlements, such as the kaika (village) Tahuna near present-day Queenstown, Te Kirikiri Pa, located where the Queenstown gardens are found today, a Ngati Mamoe kaika near the Kawarau Falls called O Te Roto, and another called Takerehaka near Kingston. The Ngati Mamoe chief Tu Wiri Roa had a daughter, Haki Te Kura, who is remembered for her feat of swimming across the lake from Tahuna, a distance of some three kilometres.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the lake, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

A key attraction of the lake was the access it provided to seasonal campsites and the pounamu located at the head of the lake at the Dart and Routeburn River catchments, from which countless generations gathered inaka and koko-takiwai pounamu and transported it back to coastal settlements for fashioning into tools, ornaments and weapons.

Waka and mokihi were the key modes of transport for the pounamu trade, travelling the length and breadth of Whakatipu-wai-maori. Thus there were numerous tauranga waka (landing places) on the lake and the islands upon it (Matau and Wawahi-waka). The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the lake. The lake was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the roto (lake).

Whakatipu-wai-maori is an important source of freshwater, the lake itself being fed by hukawai (melt waters). These are waters with the highest level of purity and were accorded traditional classifications by Ngai Tahu that recognised this value. Thus it is a puna (spring) which sustains many ecosystems important to Ngai Tahu. The mauri of Whakatipu-wai-maori represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Whakatipu-wai-maori as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Whakatipu-wai-maori or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Whakatipu-wai-maori as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Whakatipu-wai-maori (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Whakatipu-wai-maori.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Whakatipu-wai-maori.

SCHEDULE 61

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE WAIRERE (LAKE DUNSTAN)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 490 (SO 24729)

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Wairere as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Wairere
The name 'Te Wairere' refers to the speed with which the river once ran at this point.

The whole of the Mata-au (Clutha River), on which Te Wairere lies, was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otago hapu including Kati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The river was used as a highway into the interior, and provided many resources to sustain travellers on that journey. The river was a significant indigenous fishery, providing tuna (eels), kanakana (lamprey) and kokopu in the area over which Te Wairere now lies. Manu (birds), including moa, were taken from areas adjoining the river, over which the lake now lies.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

The waterway was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Because of its location at the confluence of Mata-au and Kawarau Rivers, Te Wairere was an important staging post on journeys inland and down-river. A tauranga waka and nohanga sited at the junction of the two rivers acted as such a staging post. As a result of this history of use and occupation there are a number of wahi taonga (including rock shelters and archaeological sites) in the area, some of which are now under the waters of the lake. Wahi tapu are important as places holding the memories and traditions of Ngai Tahu tupuna.

The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The waterway was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the waterway.

The mauri of Te Wairere represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Wairere, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Te Wairere or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Wairere as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement
Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Wairere (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Wairere.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Wairere.

SCHEDULE 22

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KA MOANA HAEHAE (LAKE ROXBURGH)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the lake known as Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 491 (SO 24730).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Ka Moana Haehae, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Ka Moana Haehae
The name Ka Moana Haehae refers to the joining of two waterways. In this case it refers to the confluence of the Mata-au and Manuherikia Rivers over which the lake lies.

The whole of the Mata-au (Clutha River), on which Ka Moana Haehae lies, was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otago hapu including Ngati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The river was

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

used as a highway into the interior, and provided many resources to sustain travellers on that journey. The river was a significant indigenous fishery, providing tuna (eels), kanakana (lamprey) and kokopu in the area over which Ka Moana Haehae now lies. Manu (birds), including moa, were taken from areas adjoining the river, over which the lake now lies.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The waterway was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Thus there were numerous tauranga waka (landing places) along it. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The waterway was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the waterway.

The mauri of Ka Moana Haehae represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Ka Moana Haehae, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Ka Moana Haehae or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Tahu to Ka Moana Haehae as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement
Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Ka Moana Haehae (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Ka Moana Haehae.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Ka Moana Haehae.

SCHEDULE 40

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR MATA-AU (CLUTHA RIVER)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Mata-au (Clutha River), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 122 (SO 24727).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Mata-au, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Mata-au
The Mata-au river takes its name from a Ngai Tahu whakapapa that traces the genealogy of water. On that basis, the Mata-au is seen as a descendant of the creation traditions. For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

On another level, the Mata-au was part of a mahinga kai trail that led inland and was used by Otakou hapu including Ngati Kuri, Ngati Ruahikihiki, Ngati Huirapa and Ngai Tuahuriri. The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The river was also very important in the transportation of pounamu from inland areas down to settlements on the coast, from where it was traded north and south. Thus there were numerous tauranga waka (landing places) along it. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The river was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continue to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the river.

The Mata-au is where Ngai Tahu's leader, Te Hautapunui o Tu, established the boundary line between Ngai Tahu and Ngati Mamoe. Ngati Mamoe were to hold mana (authority) over the lands south of the river and Ngai Tahu were to hold mana northwards. Eventually, the unions between the families of Te Hautapunui o Tu and Ngati Mamoe were to overcome these boundaries. For Ngai Tahu, histories such as this represent the links and continuity between past and present generations, reinforce tribal identity, and document the events which shaped Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Strategic marriages between hapu further strengthened the kupenga (net) of whakapapa, and thus rights to travel on and use the resources of the river. It is because of these patterns of activity that the river continues to be important to runanga located in Otago and beyond. These runanga carry the responsibilities of kaitiaki in relation to the area, and are represented by the tribal structure, Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu.

Urupa and battlegrounds are located all along this river. One battleground, known as Te Kauae Whakatoro (downstream of Tuapeka), recalls a confrontation between Ngai Tahu and Ngati Mamoe that led to the armistice established by Te Hautapunui o Tu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are places holding the memories,

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.

The mauri of Mata-au represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and
(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Mata-au, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and
(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Mata-au or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Mata-au as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Mata-au (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Mata-au.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Mata-au.

SCHEDULE 52

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR POMAHAKA RIVER

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Pomahaka, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 12 (SO 24726).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Pomahaka River, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Pomahaka River
The Pomahaka was an important mahinga kai for Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu kainga (settlements) in the Catlins and Tautuku areas. The river was particularly noted for its kanakana (lamprey) fishery. Other mahinga kai associated with the river included weka and other manu (birds).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the Pomahaka, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of the Pomahaka represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement
Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Pomahaka River, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Pomahaka River or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Pomahaka River as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Pomahaka River (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Pomahaka River.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Pomahaka River.

SCHEDULE 23

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KAKAUNUI RIVER

Statutory Area

The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the River known as Kakaunui, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 120 (SO 24725).

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Preamble

Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to the Kakaunui River, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with the Kakaunui River

The creation of the Kakaunui relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the further shaping of the island by Tu Te Rakiwhanoa and his assistants including Marokura who stocked the waterways and Kahukura, who stocked the forests. For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi. The origin of the name 'Kakaunui' has been lost, but is likely to refer to swimming in the river.

There was a tauranga waka (landing place) at the mouth of the Kakaunui, which was an important part of the coastal trails north and south. The river was also a part of the seasonal trail of mahinga kai and resource gathering and hapu and whanau bonding. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the river. The Kakaunui was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the river.

The Kakaunui was a noted indigenous fishery, offering tuna (eel), inaka (whitebait), kanakana (lamprey), kokopu and other species. Other materials provided by the river included raupo, harakeke and watercress. The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the Kakaunui, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

These mahinga kai resources supported both semi-permanent and seasonal occupations, including a kainga on the northern bank of the river near Maheno. The surviving rock art remnants and rock shelters are a particular taonga of the area, providing a unique record of the lives and beliefs of the people who travelled the river.

The mauri of the Kakaunui represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the river.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to the Kakaunui River, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of the Kakaunui River or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to the Kakaunui River as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to the Kakaunui River (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of the Kakaunui River.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Kakaunui River.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 70

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR WAIHOLA/WAIPORI WETLAND

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Wetland known as Waihola/Waipori, the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 55 (SO 24721).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Waihola/Waipori, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Waihola/Waipori
The Waihola/Waipori wetlands were once one of the most significant food baskets in the Otago region, and featured in the seasonal activity of the coastal settlements as far away as the Otago Peninsula and harbour area, Purakaunui and Puketeraki. The wetlands were once much larger in water area and deeper than at present, connected by a labyrinth of waterways and having a gravel bed which has now been overlaid by silt and mud.

The names Waihola/Waipori are likely of Waitaha derivation, with 'hola' being the Waitaha form of 'hora' meaning flat, spread out or widespread. Waipori may in fact be a misrecording of Waipouri, which is used in many older manuscripts, being a reference to the dark, tanin-stained water the wetland receives from Waipori River, a heavily wooded catchment.

The Waihola/Waipori area was visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. The wetland supported a number of pa within its environs and nearby. For example, Whakaraupuka, the pa of the Ngati Mamoe chief Tukiauau was located in the area now known as Sinclair Wetlands, although Tukiauau eventually relocated further to the south as the southward movement of his Ngai Tahu foes became uncomfortably close.

There were also many nohoanga (temporary campsites) located within the complex, used by food gathering parties which would travel to the lakes and camp on the fringes for two to three days to gather kai; to eel, hunt water fowl and gather flax. There were also permanent or semi-permanent settlements located in a number of locations around the lakes, some on islands in the wetlands system.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

A number of other settlements further afield were also dependent on the mahinga kai resources of Waihola/Waipori for sustenance, including Tu Paritaniwha Pa near Momona, Omoua Pa above Henley, Maitapapa (Henley area), the kaik south of Henley and Takaaihitau near the old Taieri Ferry bridge, in addition to other settlements adjacent to the Taieri River up and downstream of the wetlands. Otakou and Puketeraki hapu would also make seasonal visits to gather resources and strengthen and maintain the kupenga (net) of whakapapa on which their rights to use those resources were based.

There is an account which tells of a sudden flood which required people trapped on the bank at a place called Whakaraupo, on the network of waterways that link Waihola with Waipori, to hastily construct a mokihi out of raupo to reach safety. A meeting place was opened here in 1901 by the locals, the house was named Te Waipounamu.

For Ngai Tahu, histories such as these reinforce tribal identity and solidarity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Waihola/Waipori was a key mahinga kai resource for Ngai Tahu based along the Otago coastal region, where an abundance of tuna (eel), inaka (whitebait), patiki (flounder) and other indigenous fish were available. Waterfowl and fibre resources such as harakeke and raupo were also easily accessible from the wetlands. Spearing, setting hinaki and nets, and bobbing for eel were regular activities on the wetlands in the season. The gathering of young ducks in the moult, and the catching of herons, pukeko and other birds supplemented the broad range of kai available from the wetlands.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Waihola/Waipori, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The attractiveness of Waihola/Waipori as a mahinga kai was enhanced by their accessibility. With the direct link to the Taieri River, access via the Taieri to villages on the banks of the Taieri River, upstream and down, and access by waka to the coast and northward to Otakou, kai and other resources gathered from the wetlands could be transported back to these home bases with relative ease.

The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the wetlands. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the wetlands.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Because of the long history of use of Waihola/Waipori as a mahinga kai, supporting permanent and temporary settlements, there are numerous urupa, wahi tapu and wahi taonga associated with the wetlands. These are all places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are a particular focus for whanau traditions.

The mauri of Waihola/Waipori represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the wetlands. The wetlands represent, in their resources and characteristics, a strong element of identity for those who had manawhenua (tribal authority over the area) whose tupuna were nurtured on the food and resources of the wetlands for generations.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Waihola/Waipori, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Waihola/Waipori or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be,) to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Waihola/Waipori as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Waihola/Waipori (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Waihola/Waipori.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Waihola/Waipori.

SCHEDULE 60

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE TAURAKA POTI (MERTON TIDAL ARM)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Wetland known as Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 56 (SO 24722).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Tauraka Poti, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Tauraka Poti
Te Tauraka Poti, fed by the streams known as Kirikiri Whakahoro and Kokonui, was a major mahinga kai for kainga and pa located on the coast north of the Otago Peninsula. The wetlands were a rich source of kai, including tuna (eels), mohoao (black flounder), giant kokopu and water fowl. The wetlands were particularly valued as a spawning ground for inaka (whitebait).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Te Tauraka Poti, the relationship of people with the wetland and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

As a result of this history of use, there are a number of wahi taonga within the wetland area, including middens and other evidence of occupation. These are important as places holding the memories of Ngai Tahu tupuna.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Te Tauraka Poti formed an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the wetland.

Much of Te Tauraka Poti's continuing significance to Ngai Tahu lies in the fact that it is the only remaining wetland area of any significance in the vicinity. The mauri of Te Tauraka Poti represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the wetland.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement);
(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Tauraka Poti, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement);
(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Te Tauraka Poti or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Tauraka Poti as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Tauraka Poti (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Tauraka Poti.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Tauraka Poti.

SCHEDULE 28

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR KURAMEA (LAKE CATLINS)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the Lake known as Kuramea (Lake Catlins), the location of which is shown on Allocation Plan MD 134 (SO 24728).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Kuramea, as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Kuramea
Kuramea is the traditional name for the waterway now known as Catlins Lake.

The lake and estuary were significant sources of mahinga kai, supporting a number of nohoanga (settlements) in the vicinity. Tuna (eels), inaka (whitebait), tuaki (cockles), pupu (mudsnails), pipi and flatfish were taken from Kuramea. The lake was also a source of raranga (weaving) materials including harakeke and paru (mud used in dying).

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of Kuramea, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

As a result of this history of use, there are a number of wahi taonga within the wetland area, including middens and other evidence of occupation. These are important as places holding the memories of Ngai Tahu tupuna. In particular, a number of archaeological finds within the wetlands confirm the area's history as a wake (canoe) building area.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

The mauri of Kuramea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the lake.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Kuramea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Kuramea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Kuramea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Kuramea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Kuramea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Kuramea.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

SCHEDULE 41

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR MATAKAEA (SHAG POINT)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Matakaea Recreation Reserve and Onewhenua Historic Reserve, as shown on Allocation Plan MS 9 (SO 24686).

Preamble
Under section 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Matakaea.

Ngai Tahu Association with Matakaea
The name Matakaea recalls the tradition of the Arai Te Uru canoe, which capsized off Moeraki. From Moeraki, the crew managed to swim ashore leaving the cargo to be taken ashore by the waves. The crew members fled inland and were transformed into the mountains which form the Southern Alps.

The Arai Te Uru tradition is also important because it explains the origins of kumara. The story originally began with Roko i Tua who came to Aotearoa and met the Kahui Tipua. The Kahui Tipua gave Roko i Tua mamaku (tree fern) to eat. However Roko i Tua preferred the kumara that he had in his belt which he took out and soaked in a bowl of water. The Kahui Tipua tasted the kumara and asked where it was from. Roko i Tua replied saying that the kumara came from 'across the sea'.

The Kahui Tipua then made a canoe and, under the leadership of Tu Kakariki, went to Hawaiiki and returned with the kumara to Aotearoa. The Kahui Tipua planted the kumara but the crop failed. However, Roko i Tua had also sailed to Hawaiiki on the canoe called Arai Te Uru. Roko i Tua landed at Whangara, Hawaiiki, and learnt the karakia (incantations) and tikanga (customs) connected with planting kumara. Roko i Tua then gave his canoe to two crew members called Pakihiwitahi and Hape ki Tua Raki. The Arai Te Uru returned under the leadership of these two commanders and eventually foundered off the Moeraki Coast at Matakaea.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

The Matakaea area has been occupied for many centuries and is the site of numerous urupa and wahi tapu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna (ancestors) and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. Urupa and wahi tapu are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.

The mauri of Matakaea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Matakaea, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Matakaea or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and

(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Matakaea as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Matakaea (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Matakaea.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Matakaea.

SCHEDULE 64

Sections 205 and 206

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TOKATA (THE NUGGETS)

Statutory Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is the area known as Tokata (The Nuggets), as shown on Allocation Plan MS 10 (SO 24699).

Preamble
Under sections 206, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Tokata as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Tokata
The creation and shaping of Tokata and the surrounding coastline relates in time to Te Waka o Aoraki, and the subsequent efforts of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa. The name Tokata is a reference to the Nuggets, however, the individual nuggets also carry their own names: Te Ana Puta has a cave in it, Pae Koau is frequented by shags, three small nuggets on the north side are known collectively as Makunui and support a large seal colony, while the nugget furthest out to sea is Porokaea. The hill on which the lighthouse stands is known to Ngai Tahu as Taumata o Te Rakipokia, and a cave on the north side of this hill is Te Ana o Katiwairua. For Ngai Tahu, such traditional names and their associated histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events that have shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

The great explorer Rakaihautu passed by this area of the Otago coast on his journey northward, and the area was subsequently visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. This area of the Otago coast has many reminders of the uneasy relationships that once existed between Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu. Skirmishes between the two iwi occurred intermittently just to the north. However, one battle occurred within the area referred to as Tokata after which some of the fallen were cooked. As a result of this activity, this area is now a wahi tapu. Such wahi tapu are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna (ancestors) and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequency protected by secret locations.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Tokata is a significant physical marker on the South Otago coast, with waka (canoes) voyaging south and north, or out to sea on fishing expeditions utilising it as a bearing marker. It also acted as a pointer to the safe tauranga waka (landing place) in Kaimataitai Bay, just to the north. The tupuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, sea routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the coast. Tokata therefore formed an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land and sea. Tokata also marks the south-eastern boundary of the Otakou Sale Deed area, marked out in 1844.

A variety of mahinga kai (principally kaimoana - seafood) is available at Tokata. The extensive rocky intertidal zone provides paua, kutai (mussels) and koura (crayfish) in abundance. The fur seal, leopard seal and sea lion all rest here, with their pups forming a ready source of kai in days gone by. Gull eggs, koau (shags) and titi (muttonbirds) were also harvested in the area. An excellent rimurapa (kelp) resource was utilised for making poha (storage bags), capable of preserving the titi for up to two years. Excellent fishing grounds seaward of Tokata supplied the resources of the coast.

The tupuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the land and sea, the relationship of people with the coastline and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to Ngai Tahu today.

The mauri of Tokata represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215, and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Tokata, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

(c) To empower the Minister responsible for management of Tokata or the Commissioner of Crown Lands, as the case may be, to enter into a Deed of Recognition as provided in section 212 (clause 12.2.6 of the deed of settlement); and
(d) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Tokata as provided in section 211 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on Effect of Statutory Acknowledgement
Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -
(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty, or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Tokata (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Tokata.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights or interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Tokata.

SCHEDULE 103

Sections 205, 312 and 313

STATUTORY ACKNOWLEDGEMENT FOR TE TAI O ARAI TE URU (OTAGO COASTAL MARINE AREA)

Specific Area
The statutory area to which this statutory acknowledgement applies is Te Tai o Arai Te Uru (the Otago Coastal Marine Area), the Coastal Marine Area of the Moeraki, Dunedin Coastal and Molyneaux constituencies of the Otago region, as shown on SO Plans 24250, 24249, and 24252, Otago Land District and as shown on Allocation Plan NT 505 (SO 19901).

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

Preamble

Under section 313, the Crown acknowledges Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu's statement of Ngai Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as set out below.

Ngai Tahu Association with Te Tai o Arai Te Uru

The formation of the coastline of Te Wai Pounamu relates to the tradition of Te Waka o Aoraki, which foundered on a submerged reef, leaving its occupants, Aoraki and his brothers, to turn to stone. They are manifested now in the highest peaks in the Ka Tiritiri o Te Moana (the Southern Alps). The bays, inlets, estuaries and fiords which stud the coast are all the creations of Tu Te Rakiwhanoa, who took on the job of making the island suitable for human habitation.

The naming of various features along the coastline reflects the succession of explorers and iwi (tribes) who travelled around the coastline at various times. The first of these was Maui, who fished up the North Island, and is said to have circumnavigated Te Wai Pounamu. In some accounts the island is called Te Waka a Maui in recognition of his discovery of the new lands, with Rakiura (Stewart Island) being Te Puka a Maui (Maui's anchor stone). A number of coastal place names are attributed to Maui, particularly on the southern coast.

The great explorer Rakaihautu travelled overland along the coast, identifying the key places and resources. He also left many place names on prominent coastal features. Another explorer, Tamatea, sailed along the Otago coast in the waka Takitimu. After the waka eventually broke its back off the coast of Murihiku, Tamatea and the survivors made their way overland back to the North Island, arriving at the coast by the place Tamatea named O-amaru (Oamaru).

Place names along the coast record Ngai Tahu history and point to the landscape features which were significant to people for a range of reasons. For example, some of the most significant rivers which enter the coastal waters of Otago include: Waitaki, Kakaunui, Waihemo (Shag), Waikouaiti, Kaikarae (Kaikorai), Tokomairiro, Mata-au (Clutha), Pounawea (Catlins). Estuaries include: Waitete (Waitati), Otakou (Otago), Makahoe (Papanui Inlet), Murikauhaka (Mate-au and Koau estuaries), Tahaukupu (Tahakopa estuary), Waipatiki (Wapati Estuary). Islands in the coastal area include Okaihe (St Michaels Island), Moturata (Taieri Island), Paparoa, Matoketoke, Hakinikini, and Aonui (Cooks Head).

Particular stretches of the coastline also have their own traditions. The tradition of the waka (canoe) Arai Te Uru and its sinking at the mouth of the Waihemo (Shag River) has led to the coastal area of Otago being known as Te Tai o Araiteuru (the coast of Arai Te Uru). Accounts of the foundering, the wreckage, and the survivors of this waka are marked by numerous landmarks almost for the length of the Otago coast. The boulders on Moeraki coast (Kai Hinaki) and the Moeraki pebbles are all associated with the cargo of gourds, kumara and taro seed which were spilled when the Arai Te Uru foundered.

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

For Ngai Tahu, traditions such as these represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations. These histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngai Tahu as an iwi.

Because of its attractiveness as a place to establish permanent settlements, including pa (fortified settlements), the coastal area was visited and occupied by Waitaha, Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu in succession, who, through conflict and alliance, have merged in the whakapapa (genealogy) of Ngai Tahu Whanui. Battle sites, urupa and landscape features bearing the names of tupuna (ancestors) record this history. Prominent headlands, in particular, were favoured for their defensive qualities and became the headquarters for a succession of rangatira and their followers. Notable pa on the Otago coast include: Makotukutuku (Oamaru), Te Raka-a-hineatea (Moeraki), Te Pa Katata, Pa a Te Wera, (Huriawa Peninsula), Mapoutahi (Purakaunui), Pukekura (Taiaroa Head), Moturata (Taieri Island). The estuaries from the Waitaki River to the Chaslands also supported various hapu.

Tupuna such as Waitai, Tukiauau, Whaka-taka-newha, Rakiiamoa, Tarewai, Maru, Te Aparangi, Taoka, Moki II, Kapo, Te Wera, Tu Wiri Roa, Taikawa, Te Hautapanuiotu among the many illustrious ancestors of Ngati Mamoe and Ngai Tahu lineage whose feats and memories are enshrined in the landscape, bays, tides and whakapapa of Otago.

The results of the struggles, alliances and marriages arising out of these migrations were the eventual emergence of a stable, organised and united series of hapu located at permanent or semi-permanent settlements along the coast, with an intricate network of mahinga kai (food gathering) rights and networks that relied to a large extent on coastal resources. Chiefs such as Korako (several), Tahatu, Honekai, Ihutakuru, Karetai, Taiaroa, Potiki, Tuhawaiki, and Pokene being some among a number who had their own villages and fishing grounds. Otago Peninsula (Muaupoko) had many kaunga nohoanga with a multitude of hapu occupying them. At one time up to 12 kainga existed in the lower Otago harbour, some larger and more important than others.

The whole of the coastal area offered a bounty of mahinga kai, including a range of kaimoana (sea food); sea fishing; eeling and harvest of other freshwater fish in lagoons and rivers; marine mammals providing whale meat and seal pups; waterfowl, sea bird egg gathering and forest birds; and a variety of plant resources including harakeke (flax), fern and ti root. In many areas the reliance on these resources increased after the land sales of the 1840s and 1850s, and the associated loss of access to much traditional land-based mahinga kai.

Many reefs along the coast are known by name and are customary fishing grounds, many sand banks, channels, currents and depths are also known for their

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

kaimoana. One example is Poatiri (Mt Charles - Cape Saunders) the name of which refers to a fish hook. Poatiri juts out into the Pacific, close to the continental shelf, and is a very rich fishing ground. Another example is Blueskin Bay which was once a kohanga (breeding ground) for the right whale, although it is well over 150 years since it has seen this activity.

Other resources were also important in the coastal area. Paru (black mud used for dying) was obtained from some areas. Some of the permanent coastal settlements, such as those at the mouth of the Mata-au (Clutha River), and at Otakou and Purakaunui, were important pounamu manufacturing sites. Trading between these villages to the south and north via sea routes was an important part of the economy.

The Otago coast was also a major highway and trade route, particularly in areas where travel by land was difficult. Pounamu and titi were traded north with kumara, taro, waka, stone resources and carvings coming south. Travel by sea between settlements and hapu was common, with a variety of different forms of waka, including the southern waka hunua (double-hulled canoe) and, post-contact, whale boats plying the waters continuously. Hence tauranga waka (landing places) occur up and down the coast in their hundreds and wherever a tauranga waka is located there is also likely to be a nohoanga (settlement), fishing ground, kaimoana resource, rimurapa (bull kelp - used to make the poha, in which titi were and still are preserved) with the sea trail linked to a land trail or mahinga kai resource. The tupuna had a huge knowledge of the coastal environment and weather patterns, passed from generation to generation. This knowledge continues to be held by whanau and hapu and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the coast.

Numerous urupa are being exposed or eroded at various times along much of coast. Water burial sites on the coast, known as waiwhakaheketupapaku, are also spiritually important and linked with important sites on the land. Places where kaitangata (the eating of those defeated in battle) occurred are also wahi tapu. Urupa are the resting places of Ngai Tahu tupuna and, as such, are the focus for whanau traditions. These are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of Ngai Tahu tupuna, and are frequently protected in secret locations.

The mauri of the coastal area represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngai Tahu Whanui with the coastal area.

Purposes of Statutory Acknowledgement

Pursuant to section 215 and without limiting the rest of this schedule, the only purposes of this statutory acknowledgement are -

(a) To require that consent authorities forward summaries of resource consent

Note: This Appendix is reproduced from the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 for public information purposes only and does not represent Otago Regional Council policy, nor does it form part of this Plan.

applications to Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu as required by regulations made pursuant to section 207 (clause 12.2.3 of the deed of settlement); and

(b) To require that consent authorities, the Historic Places Trust, or the Environment Court, as the case may be, have regard to this statutory acknowledgement in relation to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru, as provided in sections 208 to 210 (clause 12.2.4 of the deed of settlement); and

(c) To enable Te Runanga o Ngai Tahu and any member of Ngai Tahu Tainui Whanui to cite this statutory acknowledgement as evidence of the association of Ngai Tahu to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as provided in section 208 (clause 12.2.5 of the deed of settlement).

Limitations on effect of Statutory Acknowledgement

Except as expressly provided in sections 208 to 211, 213, and 215, -

(a) This statutory acknowledgement does not affect, and is not to be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and

(b) Without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation, or bylaw, may give any greater or lesser weight to Ngai Tahu's association to Te Tai o Arai Te Uru (as described in this statutory acknowledgement) than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation, or bylaw, if this statutory acknowledgement did not exist in respect of Te Tai o Arai Te Uru.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not affect the lawful rights and interests of any person who is not a party to the deed of settlement.

Except as expressly provided in this Act, this statutory acknowledgement does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, Te Tai o Arai Te Uru.

Brooker's Editorial Note

It appears that the above reference (in (c) of 'Purposes') to ''section 208'' should be read as a reference to ''section 211'' because cl 208 of the Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Bill, relating to the use of statutory acknowledgement with submissions, became s 211 of this Act.